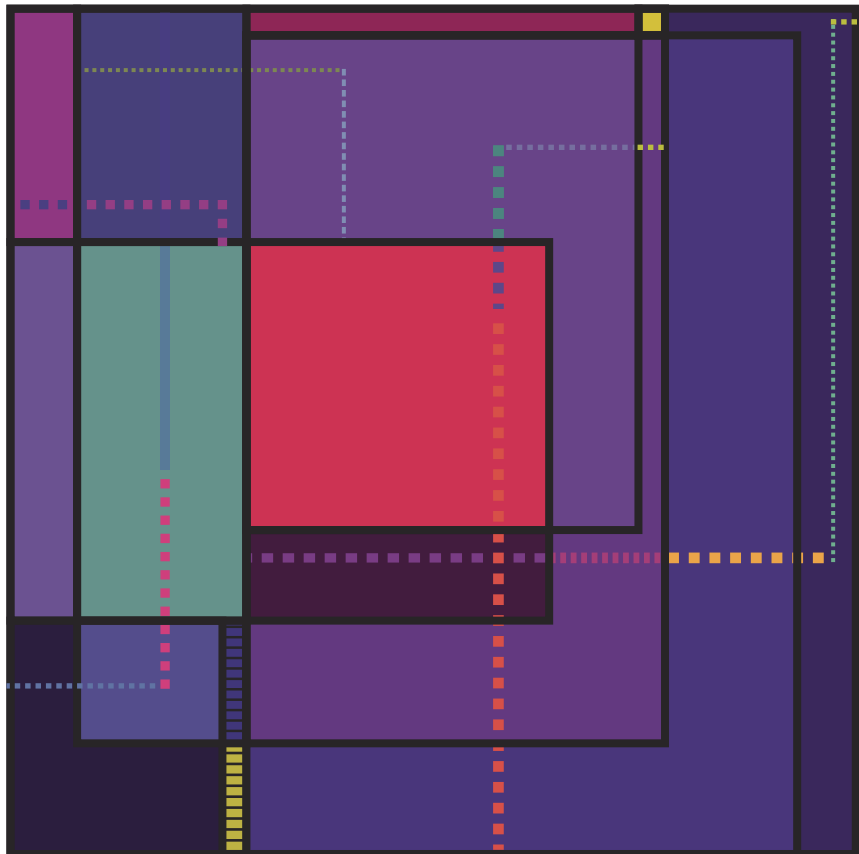




Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide



The **wozfest** Digitising System

The *Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide* was scanned, character-recognised, and composed into a PDF at **wozfest** on a desktop publishing system using an Apple **iMac** computer.

Scans were performed at 600dpi with [VueScan](#) from a [Brother multifunction printer](#); then edited in [Affinity Photo](#) and [PhotoShop CS2](#) (the latter running with [Keyboard Maestro](#) on Mac OS X v10.6 Snow Leopard in a [VirtualBox](#) emulated environment).

Images were converted to indexed colour, consistent sizes, and converted to PDF in [ImageMagick](#).

Text was OCR'd using [OCRmyPDF](#).



Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide



This manual and the software described in it are copyrighted, with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual or the software may not be copied, in whole or part, without written consent of Apple, except in the normal use of the software or to make a backup copy of the software. The same proprietary and copyright notices must be affixed to any permitted copies as were affixed to the original. This exception does not allow copies to be made for others, whether or not sold, but all of the material purchased (with all backup copies) may be sold, given, or loaned to another person. Under the law, copying includes translating into another language or format.

You may use the software on any computer owned by you, but extra copies cannot be made for this purpose.

The Apple logo is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Use of the “keyboard” Apple logo (Option-Shift-K) for commercial purposes without the prior written consent of Apple may constitute trademark infringement and unfair competition in violation of federal and state laws.

© Apple Computer, Inc., 1993
20525 Mariani Avenue
Cupertino, CA 95014-6299
(408) 996-1010

Apple, the Apple logo, APDA, AppleShare, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, ImageWriter, LaserWriter, LocalTalk, Macintosh, MacTCP, and TokenTalk are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

Balloon Help, Macintosh Quadra, PowerBook, and System 7 are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

Adobe, Adobe Illustrator, and PostScript are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems, Inc.

Electrocomp 2000 is a trademark of Image Graphics, Inc.

ITC Garamond and ITC Zapf Dingbats are registered trademarks of International Typeface Corporation.

Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

NuBus is a trademark of Texas Instruments.

QuarkXPress is a registered trademark of Quark, Inc.

Simultaneously published in the United States and Canada.

Mention of third-party products is for informational purposes only and constitutes neither an endorsement nor a recommendation. Apple assumes no responsibility with regard to the performance or use of these products.

Contents

About This Guide / ix

What this guide contains / ix

What you need to know / xi

Learning paths / xi

Getting help / xii

For more information / xii

1 The Apple Internet Router / 1

The Basic Connectivity Package / 2

The AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension / 2

The AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension / 3

2 Installing the Basic Connectivity Package / 5

System requirements / 6

Installing the router on a startup disk / 7

Customizing your installation / 9

Upgrading from the AppleTalk Internet Router version 2.0 / 11

Connecting networks to the router / 13

Connecting a LocalTalk network to the router / 13

Designating an AppleTalk connection as the user port / 14

3 Setting Up the Apple Internet Router / 17

- Creating a setup document / 18
- Configuring the router for startup / 22
 - Selecting a startup document / 23
 - Starting the router at system startup / 24
 - Canceling router startup if an error occurs / 25
 - Specifying the routing table's maximum size / 25
 - Specifying the zone table's maximum size / 26
- Specifying an administrator's password / 27
- Starting the router / 28
- Quitting Router Manager / 29

4 Configuring an AppleTalk Port / 31

- Configuring the router as a seed router or a nonseed router / 32
 - Identifying networks on an internet / 33
 - Defining AppleTalk zones for a network / 34
- Configuring a LocalTalk port / 35
 - Selecting a zone name from a list of connected zones / 37
- Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk port / 38
 - Adding names from a list of connected zones to the zone list / 41
 - Renaming a zone in the zone list / 41
 - Removing a zone name from the zone list / 42
 - Setting the default zone / 42
- Hiding devices on an internet / 43

5 Half-Routing / 47

- Configuring a half-routing port / 48
 - Originating a connection / 50
 - Answering to establish a connection / 52
 - Calling back to establish a connection / 54

6 Tunneling Through Foreign Network Systems / 57

- Exterior routers / 59
- Fully connected and partially connected tunnels / 59

7 Configuring the Wide Area Routing Options / 61

Resolving numbering conflicts by remapping remote network numbers / 62

Remapping remote network numbers / 64

Clustering remapped network numbers / 65

Allowing routing distances greater than 15 hops / 67

Using redundant paths / 69

Designating a port as a backup path / 69

Increasing the routing distance through a port / 70

Hiding networks in an internet / 72

8 Modifying the Router's Setup / 75

Changing the router's zone / 76

Entering your password to open Router Manager / 77

Activating and deactivating ports / 78

Stopping the router / 79

Modifying a setup document / 80

Adding or changing a port configuration / 80

Changing a network number or range / 81

Changing a zone name or zone list / 82

Removing a device from a list of hidden devices / 83

Removing a network from a list of hidden networks / 84

Removing a port configuration / 84

Using a different startup document / 85

Changing other router-startup options / 85

Customizing your view of a setup window / 85

Displaying a detailed or summary view / 85

Setting the numeric display format / 86

Changing the administrator's password / 87

Removing password protection / 88

9 Monitoring the Router / 89

Monitoring network routing information / 90

The routing table / 91

Displaying a detailed or summary view / 93

Setting the numeric display format / 93

Sorting the routing table / 94

Freezing the display / 95

Monitoring network activity and reliability over time /	96
Displaying network activity and error statistics as bar graphs /	97
Displaying network activity and error statistics as line graphs /	97
Monitoring port statistics /	98
Monitoring incoming and outgoing traffic /	99
Monitoring network errors /	100
Resetting router and port statistics /	101
Exporting information /	102
Printing /	103

10 Troubleshooting / 105

Diagnosing and solving problems /	106
Network problems /	108
Missing devices /	108
Intermittent access to network services and devices /	109
Degradation of network performance /	110
Using the Router Log to obtain information about router operation /	111
Internet problems /	112
Problems with wide area internets /	119
Problems with the Apple Internet Router /	125
Router Manager error messages /	128
Messages displayed when opening Router Manager /	129
Messages displayed in Router Manager when there is insufficient memory /	130
Messages displayed when the router is not running /	131
Messages displayed when creating a setup document /	131
Messages displayed when starting the router /	134
Messages displayed when the router is running /	138

11 The GlobalTalk Network / A-1

GlobalTalk—a background / A-2

A short history of AppleTalk / A-2

GlobalTalk—a phenomenon 40 years in the making / A-2

GlobalTalk technical basics / A-4

System requirements overview / A-4

Beyond the basics / A-5

Joining GlobalTalk first steps / A-6

Real vs emulated hardware / A-7

Host system vs emulated system / A-8

QEMU / A-8

Other emulation systems / A-9

Connecting to Ethernet / A-10

Built-in, expansion cards, BlueSCSI WiFi / A-10

Network speed considerations / A-10

Bridged vs NAT networking for emulated systems / A-11

Network numbering and zones / A-12

LocalTalk vs EtherTalk network numbers / A-12

Network ranges / A-12

Claiming network numbers and ranges on GlobalTalk / A-12

When ranges overlap / A-13

AppleTalk zones / A-13

CGNAT and Tier 1 VPNs / A-14

NAT hairpinning / A-15

Network router configuration / A-15

DHCP and DHCP reservation vs manual address / A-15

IP address vs hostname / A-16

Dynamic DNS / A-16

Port forwarding / A-17

GlobalTalk software set up / A-18

Network services configuration / A-18

Apple Internet Router setup—a walkthrough / A-21

GlobalTalk troubleshooting basics / A-28

TCP, UDP and IP issues / A-28

AppleTalk issues / A-29

System issues / A-29

Backing up / A-30

GlobalTalk network services / A-31

File sharing / A-31

AppleShare / A-31

Netatalk / A-31

Other file servers / A-31

Users and permissions / A-32

Printing / A-32

LocalTalk printers / A-32

Laser printers and PPDs / A-32

Printing to PDF / A-33

CUPS and Netatalk / A-33

Printing / A–30	
LocalTalk printers / A–30	
Laser printers and PPDs / A–30	
Printing to PDF / A–31	
CUPS and Netatalk / A–31	
Other services / A–31	
Gaming / A–31	
PowerTalk and AppleMail / A–31	
BBSes, forums and chat / A–32	
Network backups / A–32	
MacIP Gateway / A–32	
Useful utilities and resources / A–33	
Router Manager 3.0.1W / A–33	
AIRConfig / A–34	
GlobalTalk Updater / A–34	
Disinfectant / A–35	
MacTCP Ping / A–35	
TalkCrawler / A–36	
Who’s There / A–36	
Trawl / A–37	
MacPing Pro / A–37	
Inter•Poll Admin / A–38	
timelord/tardis / A–39	
QuickDraw Viewer / A–40	
Mac OS X/Netatalk command line AppleTalk utilities / A–40	
atlookup (Mac OS X) / A–40	
nbplkup and getzones (Netatalk) / A–41	
Experimentation on the command line / A–41	
Mind the (AIR) gap—other AppleTalk bridges and routers / A–42	
Solutions contemporaneous with Apple Internet Router / A–42	
LocalTalk Bridge / A–42	
GatorBox / A–42	
Cisco / A–42	
Modern solutions / A–43	
jroutel / A–43	
TashTalk / A–43	
TashRouter / A–43	
AirTalk / A–43	
StarTalk/LT / A–43	
Security on GlobalTalk / A–44	
Google account / A–44	
IP address/hostname / A–44	
Port forwarding / A–44	
Insecure services / A–45	
Berserk print jobs / A–45	
Viruses / A–45	
A vision of GlobalTalk’s future / A–47	

Appendix A Planning Your AppleTalk Internet / 139

- When should you create an internet? / 140
- Planning the physical layout of your internet / 142
 - Placing routers in an internet / 142
 - Creating a backbone network / 144
 - Choosing a type of backbone network / 145
 - Connecting networks having different transmission rates / 146
 - Creating redundant paths / 147
 - Laying out your internet for optimal performance / 148
 - Evaluating network activity / 148
 - Evaluating network error statistics / 149
- Choosing a network-numbering scheme / 149
- Specifying network ranges / 150
- Dividing an internet into zones / 151
 - Balancing network services on the internet / 152
 - Facilitating departmental work / 152

Appendix B The Router Manager Program / 155

- File menu / 156
- Edit menu / 156
- View menu / 157
- Control menu / 158
- Windows menu / 159

Glossary / 161

Index / 171

About This Guide

This guide explains how to install the Apple Internet Router Basic Connectivity Package and how to use the Router Manager application program. It provides information about setting up the router, configuring ports to create local area and wide area internets, monitoring and troubleshooting router operation, and planning your internet.

What this guide contains

The chapters of this guide contain the following information:

- Chapter 1, “The Apple Internet Router,” provides a brief introduction to the family of products that constitute the Apple Internet Router, including the Basic Connectivity Package, the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension, and the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension.
- Chapter 2, “Installing the Basic Connectivity Package,” provides information about the system requirements for the Apple Internet Router and explains how to install the router software included in the Basic Connectivity Package on a startup disk, and select a user port and a zone for the router.
- Chapter 3, “Setting Up the Apple Internet Router,” explains how to use Router Manager to create a setup document, configure the router for startup, specify an administrator’s password, and start the router.
- Chapter 4, “Configuring an AppleTalk Port,” provides instructions for configuring the router as a seed router or as a nonseed router, configuring a LocalTalk port, configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk port, and hiding devices on an internet.

- Chapter 5, “Half-Routing,” defines half-routing; and explains how to set up a half-routing port to originate a connection, answer to establish a connection, or call back to establish a connection.
- Chapter 6, “Tunneling Through Foreign Network Systems,” defines tunneling.
- Chapter 7, “Configuring the Wide Area Routing Options,” provides information about configuring options for a half-routing or tunneling port.
- Chapter 8, “Modifying the Router’s Setup,” explains how to change the router’s zone; enter, change, or remove the administrator’s password; activate and deactivate ports; stop the router; modify the port configurations in a setup document; use a different startup document; change the router’s other startup options; and customize your view of a setup window.
- Chapter 9, “Monitoring the Router,” explains how to use Router Manager to monitor network routing information, and router and port statistics—including routing activity, and network reliability and error rates—when the router is running.
- Chapter 10, “Troubleshooting,” provides a troubleshooting checklist; explains how to use the Router Log; describes some problems that you might encounter with a network, a local or wide area internet, or the Apple Internet Router—including their symptoms, causes, and solutions; and provides additional information about recovering from errors while using Router Manager.
- Appendix A, “Planning Your AppleTalk Internet,” provides guidelines for planning an internet—including evaluating your needs, planning the internet’s physical layout, choosing a network-numbering scheme, specifying a network range, and dividing the internet into zones.
- Appendix B, “The Router Manager Program,” describes the menus and commands of Router Manager, and provides cross-references to the task sections that explain how to use the commands.
- The glossary defines terms related to the AppleTalk network system, internet routing, and wide area networking.

You can purchase two extensions to the Apple Internet Router separately from the Basic Connectivity Package—the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension and the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension. The guides for these extensions include chapters on installation, port configuration, and troubleshooting.

What you need to know

The *Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide* assumes that you are familiar with Macintosh System 7, including file sharing, the Network control panel, and the Chooser. For information about using the Macintosh or System 7, refer to the manuals that came with your computer or with your System 7 upgrade kit. To use this guide successfully, you should also understand basic AppleTalk networking and routing concepts. Experience in network administration is helpful.

Learning paths

This guide supports the information requirements of both novice and experienced network administrators. The best learning path for you to follow depends on your experience.

- If you are new to network administration, read Appendix A, “Planning Your AppleTalk Internet,” and background information that precedes task instructions. Then, follow the task instructions. If you encounter a term with which you are unfamiliar, refer to the Glossary.
- If you are an experienced network administrator, but are setting up an Apple Internet Router for the first time, read the background information about internet routing and wide area routing provided in this guide. Generally, you can simply follow the task instructions.
- If you have previously installed version 2.0 of the AppleTalk Internet Router, be sure to read the section “Upgrading from the AppleTalk Internet Router Version 2.0” in Chapter 2 before installing the Apple Internet Router. Much of what you learned about setting up and monitoring a router using the Router desk accessory (DA), included with version 2.0 of the AppleTalk Internet Router, applies to the Router Manager application program, included with the Apple Internet Router. Reading Appendix B, “The Router Manager Program,” will help you to transfer your knowledge of the Router DA to Router Manager. Also, read the task instructions and the chapters about wide area routing, which is new to the Apple Internet Router.

Getting help

Router Manager includes Balloon Help. Balloons provide on-screen descriptions of the items on the Macintosh screen. To turn on Balloon Help, choose Show Balloons from the Help (?) menu. Subsequently, when you point to an item on the screen, a balloon that explains the item's use appears beside the item. To turn off Balloon Help, choose Hide Balloons from the Help menu.

For more information

The following publications from Apple Computer provide additional information about AppleTalk networks:

- The *AppleTalk Network System Overview* provides a technical introduction to the AppleTalk network system and its protocol architecture. Published by Addison-Wesley Publishing Company.
- The *AppleTalk Remote Access Modem Scripting Language Guide*, which is included in the AppleTalk Remote Access Modem Toolkit, provides information about writing modem scripts. Available from APDA.
- *AppleTalk Update-Based Routing Protocol: Enhanced AppleTalk Routing* is a technical reference that provides detailed information about the AppleTalk Update-based Routing Protocol (AURP) and wide area routing. Available from APDA.
- *Inside AppleTalk*, second edition, is a technical reference that describes the AppleTalk protocols in detail. Published by Addison-Wesley Publishing Company.
- *Planning and Managing AppleTalk Networks* provides in-depth information for network administrators about planning and managing AppleTalk networks—including AppleTalk terms and concepts, and information about network services, media, topologies, security, monitoring and optimizing network performance, and troubleshooting. Published by Addison-Wesley Publishing Company.
- *Understanding Computer Networks* provides an overview of networking—including basic information about protocol architectures, network media, and topologies. Published by Addison-Wesley Publishing Company.

You can obtain books published by Addison-Wesley at your local bookstore. Contact APDA to order developer tools and technical references. APDA offers convenient worldwide access to over 300 Apple and third-party development tools, resources, and information for anyone interested in developing applications on Apple platforms.

APDA

Apple Computer, Inc.

P.O. Box 319

Buffalo, NY 14207-0319

800-282-2732 (United States)

800-637-0029 (Canada)

716-871-6555 (International)

716-871-6511 (FAX)

AppleLink: APDA

America Online: APDA

CompuServe: 76666,2405

Internet: APDA@applelink.apple.com

About This Addendum

I have prepared this addendum to the *Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide* in the lead up to [MARCHintosh](#) 2025.

It is the result of my unexpected participation¹ in MARCHintosh 2024 (my first MARCHintosh), during which I not only developed an interest in the “how to” of GlobalTalk participation, but also experienced the joy of seeing such a diverse mix of administrators and systems involved in the GlobalTalk internet.

I successfully raised funds with other node admins to buy an original boxed Apple Internet Router v3.0.1 package on eBay, with manual and disks, and it allowed me to confirm various configuration matters for GlobalTalk networking.

GlobalTalk has continued past 31 March 2024, and my own Apple Internet Router node has remained online for much of that time. There are no plans to retire my node, and I do hope to expand the services offered over it in the years to come.

It was my intention to prepare this addendum in the afterglow of MARCHintosh 2024—however, as often happens with our retrocomputing hobby, “real life” got in the way and it took the approach of MARCHintosh 2025 for me to gather the necessary time and energy to finally tackle this particular labour of love.

And it is, in its own way, a love letter to what the GlobalTalk network is—a veritable ragtag fugitive fleet of retro-enthusiasts looking to re-experience a simpler time of computer networking.

It's important to note that GlobalTalk is more than any single node, or group of nodes, just as it's more than “just another part of” MARCHintosh—it is a community, it is an adventure, it is a learning experience, and it is a *lot* of fun.

So, “Turn On, Log In, (Hopefully Don't) Drop Out”, and have a ball on the weird corner of the Internet that is... #GlobalTalk.

[@europius](#), February 2025

¹“Unexpected” as I no longer have any retro Macintosh computers in my collection.

What this addendum contains

This addendum contains a new chapter for the *Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide*, Chapter 11—**The GlobalTalk Network**, and additional pages for the Table of Contents.

The addendum is available in several versions:

- A collated *Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide* PDF, which has the original scanned and OCR'd guide, and the new PDF pages inserted as appropriate—this effectively represents a new edition of the original guide
- An Addendum-only PDF at the same page size as the original manual, with no page or punch marks.
- An Addendum-only PDF with page and punch marks for printing double-sided, cutting down and punching for insertion into an original *Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide* printed manual. Insert this leaf before Chapter 1, and the following Table of Contents leaf after page vi. The cover leaf can be left out, inserted before Chapter 11, or inserted at the end of the manual.

Thanks!

This addendum, and GlobalTalk, wouldn't have been possible without some key players. I can't hope to name them all, but those I especially wish to say "Thanks" to include:

- [@paulrickards](#) and [@billgoats](#), the "Original GlobalTalkers", and their partner in crime [@vga256](#), who coined the name
- My fellow retro-enthusiasts who helped me to buy an original Apple Internet Router package, making this addendum possible: [@ctb31](#), [@Jongleur](#), [@LikesOldMacs](#), [@billgoats](#), [@RetroSwim](#), [@DrJosh9000](#)
- Those who proofread this addendum and offered invaluable guidance: [@LikesOldMacs](#), [@danieltufvesson](#), [@rajiv](#), [@arroz](#), [@dldnb](#), [@RtoD](#), [@kalleboo](#)
- The GlobalTalk participants who prepared information resources and useful (and/or fun) applications (especially those I list in this addendum), who left messages in drop boxes, sent print jobs, and celebrated GlobalTalk whenever they could
- The MARCHintosh admins
- And lastly, but certainly most importantly, a heartfelt thanks goes out to all those "AppleTalk internet administrators" who took the effort to create GlobalTalk nodes, making it truly a "net to remember"

1 The Apple Internet Router

The Apple Internet Router consists of a family of AppleTalk Phase 2—compatible routing products that support both local area and wide area networking. This chapter provides a brief introduction to the products that are components of the Apple Internet Router: the Basic Connectivity Package, the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension, and the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension. You can purchase these products separately.

The Basic Connectivity Package

The Basic Connectivity Package provides router software that allows you to connect two or more AppleTalk networks to create an *internet*, in which connected networks retain their separate identities.

The Basic Connectivity Package includes the Router Manager application program, which allows you to create setup documents, configure ports on the router, configure the router for startup, control and troubleshoot router operation, and monitor network performance. For detailed information about Router Manager, see Appendix B, “The Router Manager Program.”

Using the Basic Connectivity Package, you can configure three types of AppleTalk ports—LocalTalk, EtherTalk, and TokenTalk—and *half-routing ports*, which provide connectivity to remote AppleTalk local area networks (LANs) over point-to-point links that consist of modems communicating over standard or leased telephone lines.

The AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension

With the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension, you can extend the capabilities of the Apple Internet Router. The AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension allows two or more AppleTalk networks or internets to communicate through a tunnel built on a TCP/IP network. This router extension provides an IP Tunnel access method for an Ethernet or Token Ring port on the router Macintosh.

For general information about tunneling, see Chapter 6 of this guide, “Tunneling Through Foreign Network Systems.” For information about configuring an IP tunneling port, see *Using the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension*, included when you purchase the extension.

The AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension is available from authorized Apple resellers. To order the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension, request Apple order number M8112Z/A.

The AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension

The AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension also extends the capabilities of the Apple Internet Router. The AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension allows two or more remote AppleTalk networks or internets to communicate over a point-to-point link using X.25 protocols. A *point-to-point link* is a type of half-routing link. This router extension provides an X.25 access method for a physical port that corresponds to an Apple Serial NB Card installed in the router Macintosh.

For general information about half-routing, see Chapter 5 of this guide, “Half-Routing.” For information about configuring an X.25 port to establish a half-routing link between remote AppleTalk networks or internets, see *Using the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension*, included with the extension.

The AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension is available from authorized Apple resellers. To order the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension, request Apple order number M8111Z/A.

2 Installing the Basic Connectivity Package

This chapter provides information about the system requirements for the Apple Internet Router. It also explains how to install the router software included in the Basic Connectivity Package on a startup disk, and how to select a user port and a zone for the router.

System requirements

You need the following system components to install the router software included in the Basic Connectivity Package and establish communication over an AppleTalk internet:

- system software version 7.0 or later
- an Apple Macintosh Plus or later model Macintosh computer with at least four megabytes (MB) of random-access memory (RAM) installed
- a hard disk
- an installed network cabling system
- if the router Macintosh has an Ethernet port, EtherTalk version 2.5 or later, which you can install using the Installer disks
- if the router Macintosh has a Token Ring port, TokenTalk version 2.5 or later, which you can install using the Installer disks

△ **Important** You can use the Apple Internet Router only on internets in which *all* routers are compatible with AppleTalk Phase 2.

Running the router software on a Macintosh Portable or on a Macintosh PowerBook computer is not recommended. △

To obtain the best possible router performance, install the router software on a Macintosh computer with a microprocessor that runs at a fast clock frequency.

Depending on the level of performance required on your internet, you can use the Apple Internet Router as either a dedicated or nondedicated router. A *dedicated router* runs on a computer on which no other network services reside and no other application programs are running, and provides better performance. A *nondedicated router* runs on a computer that is providing other network services concurrently. If the router will typically handle high levels of internet traffic, you should configure the router Macintosh to function as a dedicated router.

Installing the router on a startup disk

This section describes how to use the Installer to install the router software included in the Basic Connectivity Package on the current startup disk of a Macintosh. The current startup disk *must* be a hard disk on which you have already installed System 7 or a later version of system software.

The Apple Internet Router Basic Connectivity Package includes three disks, the *Apple Internet Router Basic Connectivity Installer 1, 2, and 3*. Before installing the router software, you should lock the *Installer* disks, then make backup copies of the disks. Lock your backup disks, then use them to install the router software. Set the original *Installer* disks aside for use in the event that your backup disks become damaged.

To install the router software for the ports that are available on the router Macintosh, follow these steps:

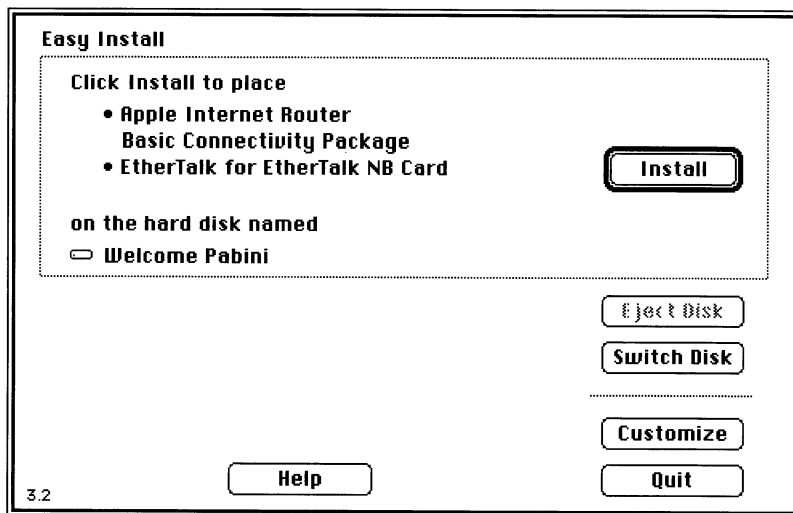
- 1 Insert the *Installer 1* disk into a floppy disk drive and double-click the *Router Installer 1* icon to open it.

The Installer icon is in the window that appears.



- 2 Double-click the Installer icon to open the Installer program.

The Easy Install dialog box appears. The contents of the list of software that the Installer will place on the hard disk depends on the model of the Macintosh computer or the network interface cards installed in the Macintosh.



3 Make sure that the hard disk on which the Installer will place the router software is the startup disk. If another hard disk is currently selected, click the Switch Disk button until the name of the startup disk appears.

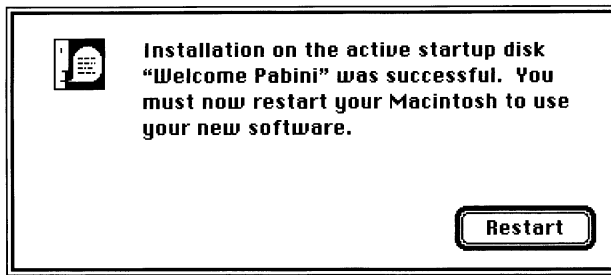
4 Click Install to place the listed software on the startup disk.

The Installer begins installing the router software on the startup disk. On-screen messages report the progress of the installation and ask you to insert the *Installer 2* disk, then the *Installer 3* disk, and finally, to reinsert the *Installer 1* disk.

You can cancel the installation at any time, leaving the startup disk unchanged.

If other application programs are currently running on the Macintosh, a message informs you that the Installer cannot install the router software on the startup disk while other application programs are running. To quit other open programs automatically and install the router software, click Continue. If you do *not* want to quit other open programs and install the router software at this time, click Cancel. The startup disk will remain unchanged.

5 When you see a message reporting that the installation was successful, click Restart.



As shown in Figure 2-1, installing the router software adds a status indicator to the Network control panel that indicates whether the router is currently on or off, and whether the router will start automatically when you next start up the router Macintosh.

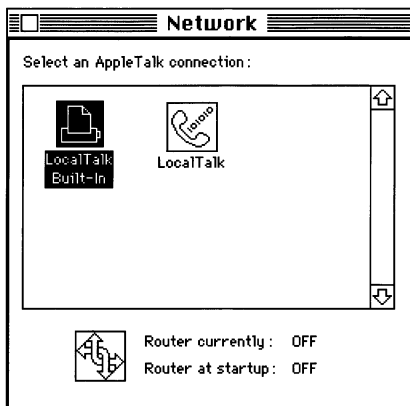


Figure 2-1 The status indicator in the Network control panel

Customizing your installation

To customize your installation of the router software, follow these steps:

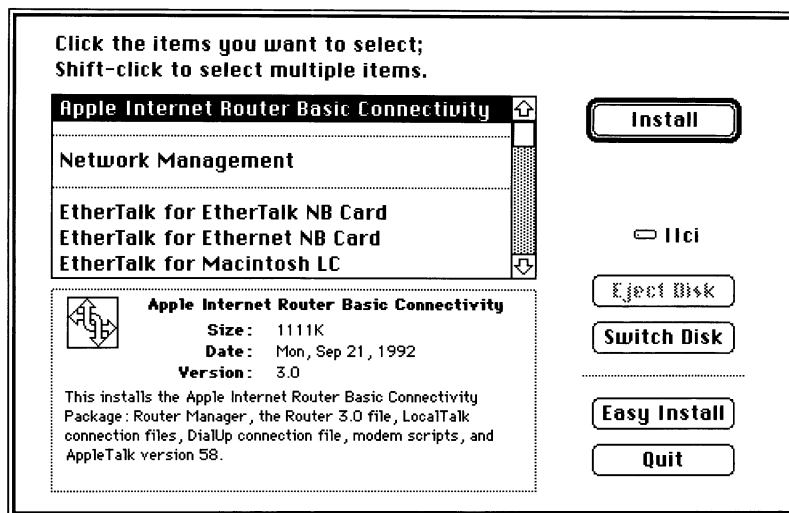
- 1 Insert the *Installer 1* disk into a floppy disk drive and double-click the *Router Installer 1* icon to open it.
- 2 Double-click the Installer icon to open the Installer program.

The Easy Install dialog box appears.

3 Make sure that the hard disk on which the Installer will place the router software is the startup disk. If another hard disk is currently selected, click the Switch Disk button until the name of the startup disk appears.

4 Click Customize to select specific software options for installation.

The Customize dialog box shown in the following figure appears. It lists all of the software options available for installation.



5 Select "Apple Internet Router Basic Connectivity" from the list to install the Apple Internet Router, then Shift-click any additional items that you want to install.

If the router Macintosh has an Ethernet port, you must also select EtherTalk. If it has a Token Ring port, you must also select TokenTalk.

6 Click Install to place the selected software on the startup disk.

The Installer begins installing the router software on the startup disk. On-screen messages report the progress of the installation and ask you to insert other disks as necessary.

You can cancel the installation at any time, leaving the startup disk unchanged.

If other application programs are currently running on the Macintosh, a message appears, informing you that the Installer cannot install the router software on the startup disk while other application programs are running. To quit other open programs automatically and install the router software, click Continue. If you do *not* want to quit other open programs and install the router software at this time, click Cancel. The startup disk will remain unchanged.

- 7 When you see a message reporting that the installation was successful, click Restart.

Upgrading from the AppleTalk Internet Router version 2.0

If version 2.0 of the AppleTalk Internet Router is already on the startup disk, follow these steps when installing the router software:

- 1 To open the Router desk accessory, choose Router from the Apple (🍏) menu.
If the Router Setup window was open when you last closed the Router DA, the Router Setup window appears.
- 2 If the Router Setup window does not appear, choose Router Setup from the Router menu to open it.
- 3 If the router is running, click the Current Status Off button in the Router Setup window to stop the router.
You *must* stop the router before installing the Apple Internet Router.
- 4 If the Restart Status On button is currently selected, click the Restart Status Off button to prevent the router from starting when you start up the router Macintosh.
- 5 Close the Router Setup window.
An alert box appears, requesting you to save the changes that you made to the router setup.

- 6 Click Yes to save your changes to the router setup.
- 7 Insert the *Installer 1* disk into a floppy disk drive and double-click the *Router Installer 1* icon to open it.
- 8 Double-click the Installer icon to open the Installer program.

The Easy Install dialog box appears.
- 9 Make sure that the hard disk on which the Installer will place the router software is the startup disk. If another hard disk is currently selected, click the Switch Disk button until the name of the startup disk appears.

10 Click Install to place the listed software on the startup disk.

The Installer begins installing the router software on the startup disk. On-screen messages report the progress of the installation and ask you to insert other disks as necessary.

You can cancel the installation at any time, leaving the startup disk unchanged.

If other application programs are currently running on the Macintosh, a message appears, informing you that the Installer cannot install the router software on the startup disk while other application programs are running. To quit other open programs automatically and install the router software, click Continue. If you do *not* want to quit other open programs and install the router software at this time, click Cancel. The startup disk will remain unchanged.

11 When you see a message reporting that the installation was successful, click Restart.

Installing the Apple Internet Router renames version 2.0 of the AppleTalk Internet Router as *Router 2.0*. To use the router setup that you created for version 2.0 of the router, open Router 2.0 as a setup document.

Connecting networks to the router

Depending on the ports that are present on the router Macintosh, you may be able to connect LocalTalk, Ethernet, and Token Ring networks.

- ▲ **Warning** Shut down the router Macintosh before connecting a network to any of its ports. If you connect any type of network other than a LocalTalk network to the router Macintosh while it is on, you may damage the computer or the network interface card to which you are connecting the network. If you connect a LocalTalk network to the router Macintosh while it is on, the router Macintosh assigns itself a node identifier (node ID) without verifying that no other device on the network is currently using that node ID. If more than one device on a network has the same node ID, other devices on the network cannot access either device until one of the devices is switched off, then on again. ▲

The model of Macintosh computer used as a router determines the number of AppleTalk networks that you can connect directly to the router. The modem and printer ports on the router Macintosh enable you to connect two LocalTalk networks. If the router Macintosh has a built-in Ethernet port—for example, a Macintosh Quadra—you can connect an Ethernet network to that port. The expansion slots in the router Macintosh and the network interface cards installed in them enable you to connect additional networks. The Apple Internet Router software allows you to connect a maximum of 32 networks directly to the router. See the manuals that came with the computer for information about the ports and the number of expansion slots available on the router Macintosh.

If the router Macintosh does not have a built-in Ethernet port, you must install a network interface card—such as an Apple Ethernet NB Card or an Apple Ethernet LC Card—in the router Macintosh to connect an Ethernet network to the router. You must install an Apple Token Ring 4/16 NB Card in the router Macintosh to connect a Token Ring network to the router. For information about any of these network interface cards, refer to the manual that came with the card.

Connecting a LocalTalk network to the router

A router Macintosh has two *serial ports*—the printer port and the modem port. Generally, you should connect a LocalTalk network to the *printer port* on the router Macintosh. However, when connecting a second LocalTalk network to the router, you can use the *modem port*.

Designating an AppleTalk connection as the user port

Several AppleTalk connections may be available in the Network control panel on the router Macintosh. You can either use the *default* LocalTalk Built-In connection as the *user port* for nonrouting services available on the Macintosh when the router is running or designate another AppleTalk connection as the user port. The user port determines the zone in which the router Macintosh and any network services provided by that Macintosh reside.

Once you have installed the router software and restarted the Macintosh, select an AppleTalk connection to designate it as the user port for the router Macintosh. To select a user port, follow these steps:

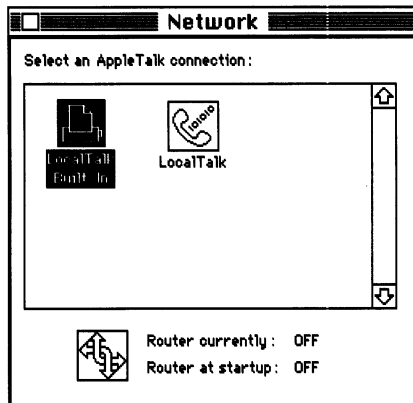
1 Choose Control Panels from the Apple menu.

The Network icon is in the Control Panels window that appears.



2 Double-click the Network icon to open the Network control panel.

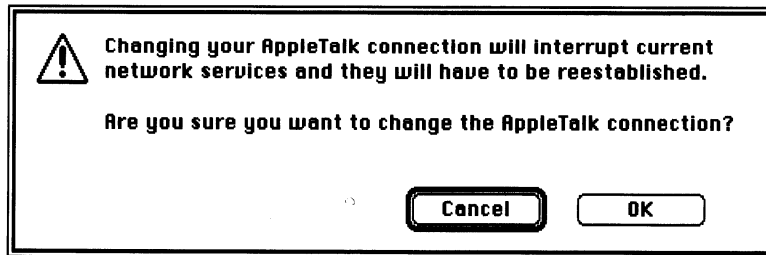
The Network control panel appears.



The Network control panel displays whatever AppleTalk connections are available on the router Macintosh. The ports available on the router Macintosh determine the AppleTalk connections installed by the Installer. Each icon in the Network control panel corresponds to a network that is connected to a port on the router. The LocalTalk Built-In connection for the printer port is the default AppleTalk connection. Other AppleTalk connections that may appear in the Network control panel include an EtherTalk connection for an Ethernet port, a TokenTalk connection for a Token Ring port, and a LocalTalk connection for the modem port. The AppleTalk connection currently in use appears highlighted.

3 In the Network control panel, select an AppleTalk connection to designate the corresponding port as the user port.

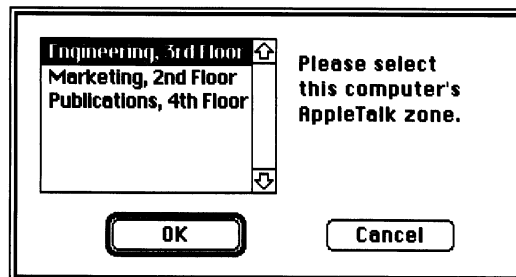
If you selected a different AppleTalk connection as the user port, the following alert box appears:



4 Click OK.

If you selected a LocalTalk connection as the user port for the router Macintosh, skip step 5.

If you selected an AppleTalk connection other than LocalTalk as the user port, one or more other routers are connected to that network, and you have not previously selected a zone for the router Macintosh, the following dialog box appears:



- △ **Important** If this Apple Internet Router is the *only* router on the network, you must first start the router, then select a zone for the router. Follow the instructions in Chapter 3, “Setting Up the Apple Internet Router,” then follow the instructions in the section “Changing the Router’s Zone” in Chapter 8 to select a zone for the router Macintosh. △

5 Select an AppleTalk zone from the list of available zones, then click OK.

Whenever you select an AppleTalk connection other than LocalTalk as the user port *and* the connected network has more than one zone, you can select a zone in which the router Macintosh is to reside. The router Macintosh and any network services provided on that Macintosh appear in this zone in the Chooser.

The zone currently selected is highlighted. The router Macintosh remains in this zone until you select a different AppleTalk connection or select a different zone. For information about selecting a different zone for the router, see the section “Changing the Router’s Zone” in Chapter 8.

If you don’t select a zone for the router Macintosh, the zone specified as the default zone on a seed router on the network is selected automatically. For information about seed routers, see the section “Configuring the Router as a Seed Router or a Nonseed Router” in Chapter 4.

6 Close the Network control panel.

- ◆ **Note** If the Chooser is open when you change an AppleTalk connection, the network services shown in the Chooser are *not* updated. To display the services that are currently available, close the Chooser, then reopen it. ◆

3 Setting Up the Apple Internet Router

Once you have installed the router software included in the Basic Connectivity Package, and selected a user port and a zone for the router, you can begin setting up the router. Before starting the router, you must create a setup document and designate it as the startup document. This chapter explains how to use Router Manager to create a setup document, configure the router's startup options, specify an administrator's password, and start the router.

Creating a setup document

Router Manager allows you to create and open multiple setup documents. A *setup document* identifies the router and the networks connected to the router's ports.

A *router port* consists of a physical port and an access method. A router Macintosh has at least two *physical ports*: the printer port and the modem port. A router may also have other physical ports, such as an Ethernet port or a Token Ring port.

Each physical port has one or more *access methods*. Both the printer port and the modem port support two access methods: LocalTalk and DialUp. The *DialUp* access method provides half-routing through an asynchronous modem. Other types of ports support other access methods. For example, an Ethernet port supports EtherTalk Phase 2 and, if you have installed the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension, the IP Tunnel access method. A Token Ring port supports the TokenTalk and IP Tunnel access methods.

A setup document lists all of the physical ports available on the router and the access methods available for each physical port. In the setup window, you can select one or more ports and access methods for configuration. As shown in Figure 3-1, a setup document lists the following information for each port configured on the router Macintosh:

- a port description
- the port's current status—active or inactive
- the port's current settings

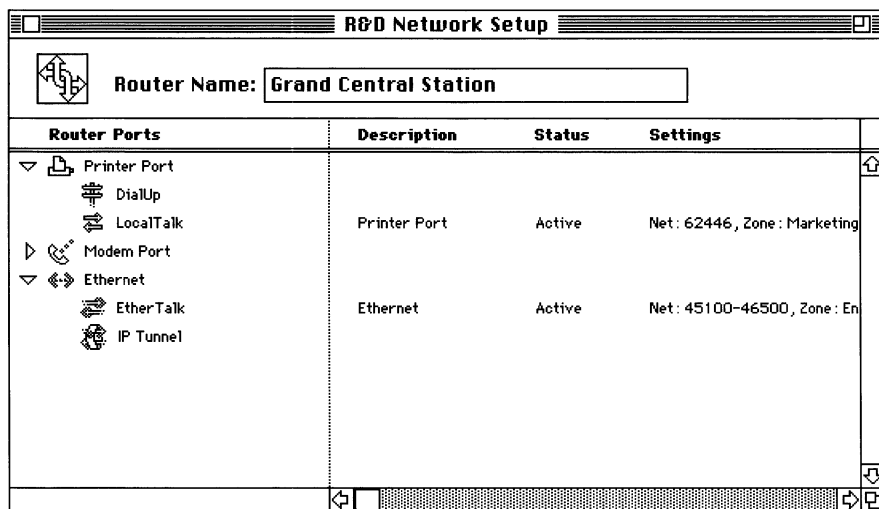


Figure 3-1 A setup document with configured ports

To create a setup document, follow these steps:

- 1 If Router Manager is not already open, double-click the Router Manager icon to open Router Manager.



Router Manager

When Router Manager opens for the first time or if you have not yet selected a setup document for the router to use at startup, an untitled setup document appears on the desktop. The setup document that the router uses at startup is referred to as the *startup document*, and contains the port description, status, and settings for each port that has been configured. Once you have selected a startup document, it opens whenever you open Router Manager. For information about selecting a startup document, see the section “Selecting a Startup Document” later in this chapter.

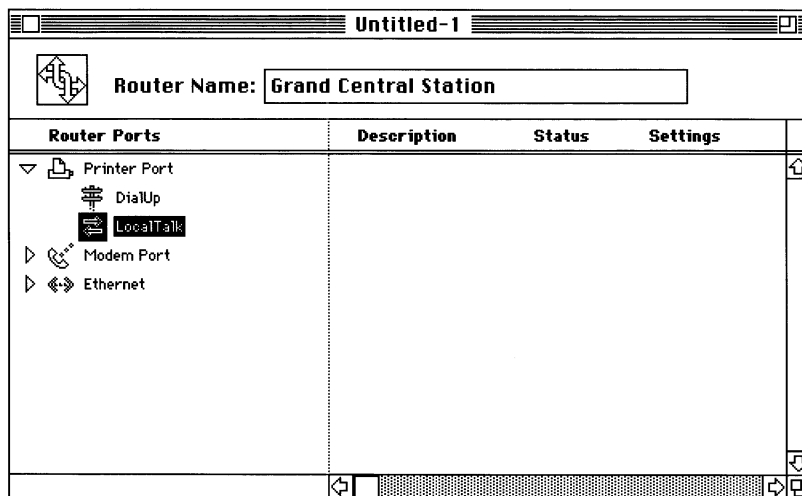
If a setup document appears, skip step 2.

- 2 If necessary, choose New from the File menu to create a new setup document.
An untitled setup document appears on the desktop.
- 3 In the setup window, type a name in the Router Name text box if you want to assign a different name to the router Macintosh.

The name of the Macintosh on which the router is installed appears in the Router Name text box by default. A router name must be 32 or fewer characters in length. A router name that consists only of the equal sign (=) character is not allowed.

- 4 Double-click a physical port, or click the right-pointing triangle to the left of that port, to display the access methods that are available for that port.

If the access methods for a port are currently displayed, click the downward-pointing triangle to the left of that port and the access methods will no longer be listed. The following figure shows a setup document with the access methods for a physical port displayed.

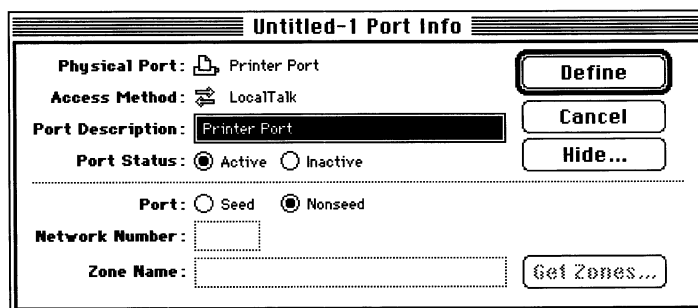


△ **Important** When creating a setup document, you *must* configure the port designated as the user port. △

5 Double-click an access method for the port that you want to configure.

Alternatively, you can click an access method to select it, then choose Define Port Info from the Edit menu.

A Port Info dialog box appears in which you can configure the port. If you selected a LocalTalk access method, the Port Info dialog box shown in the following figure appears.



The Port Info dialog box displays the name of the setup document, and the physical port and access method being configured.

6 In the Port Info dialog box, type a port description in the Port Description text box.

The name of the physical port appears in the Port Description text box by default. You can specify an optional port description to help you to identify the network connected to the port. A port description can be up to 31 characters in length and can contain any characters, including the space character.

7 Configure the port.

The procedure for configuring a port varies, depending on the type of port and the access method being configured. The Apple Internet Router supports three types of router ports:

- AppleTalk ports—through which a LocalTalk, EtherTalk, or TokenTalk access method provides connectivity between local internets of the same type or different types
- half-routing ports—through which the DialUp or another access method provides point-to-point connectivity
- tunneling ports—through which an access method for a foreign network system provides multipoint connectivity

The following road map directs you to the appropriate guides, chapters, and sections for detailed information about configuring a specific access method for a port. You need to read only those chapters and sections that pertain to the port and access method that you want to configure. Once you have configured all of the ports on the router Macintosh, you must finish creating your setup document.

	To configure . . .	Do this . . .
	<i>A LocalTalk port</i>	Follow the steps in the sections “Configuring a LocalTalk Port” and “Hiding Devices on an Internet” in Chapter 4 of this guide.
	<i>An EtherTalk port</i>	Follow the steps in the sections “Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port” and “Hiding Devices on an Internet” in Chapter 4 of this guide.
or		
	<i>A TokenTalk port</i>	

(continued) ➡

	To configure . . .	Do this . . .
	<i>A half-routing port</i>	Follow the steps in Chapter 5 of this guide, “Half-Routing,” and in Chapter 7 of this guide, “Configuring the Wide Area Routing Options.”
	<i>An IP Tunnel port</i>	Follow the instructions in <i>Using the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension</i> , and in Chapter 7 of this guide, “Configuring the Wide Area Routing Options.”
	<i>An X.25 port</i>	Follow the instructions in <i>Using the X.25 Wide Area Extension</i> , and in Chapter 7 of this guide, “Configuring the Wide Area Routing Options.”

- 8 In the Port Info dialog box, click the Active button to activate the port, if it is not already active.

When you first configure a port, its status is active by default. When the router is running, it routes data packets through all active ports. You can change the status of the port being configured from active to inactive by clicking the Inactive button.

- 9 When you have finished specifying your port configuration, click Define to close the Port Info dialog box.

- 10 Repeat steps 4 through 9 for each port that you want to configure.

- 11 Name and save your setup document.

If Router Manager encounters an error in the setup information, it will cancel the save.

Configuring the router for startup

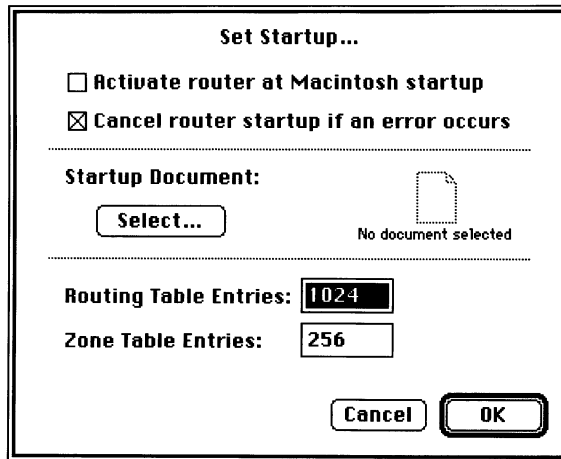
The following sections describe the various startup options that you can configure for the router.

Selecting a startup document

Before you can start the router, you must select a setup document for the router to use at startup. This setup document is referred to as the *startup document*. To select a startup document, follow these steps:

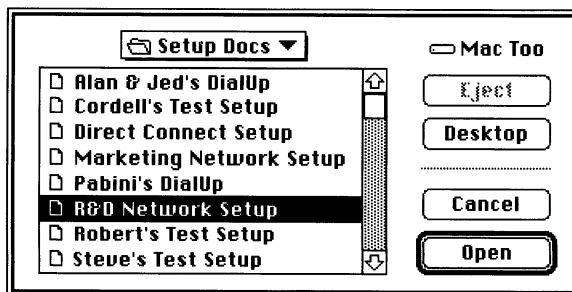
- 1 Choose Set Startup from the Control menu.

The Set Startup dialog box appears.



- 2 Click Select.

The following dialog box appears:



- 3 Select the setup document that you want to designate as the startup document in the list box, then click Open.

The name of the startup document that you selected appears beneath the document icon in the Set Startup dialog box. Router Manager will use this startup document when you start the router.

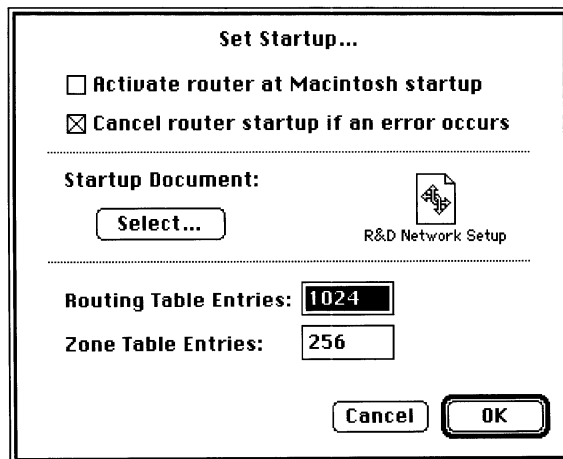
- 4 Click OK to close the Set Startup dialog box.

Starting the router at system startup

To activate the router automatically when you start up the Macintosh, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose Set Startup from the Control menu.

The Set Startup dialog box appears.



- 2 To activate the router when you start up the router Macintosh, click the “Activate router at Macintosh startup” checkbox to select it, if it’s not already selected.
- 3 Click OK.

◆ **Note** If “Activate router at Macintosh startup” is selected when you start up the router Macintosh, you can prevent the router from starting by holding down the **⌘** key until a message informs you that router startup has been canceled. ◆

Canceling router startup if an error occurs

If the router encounters an error at startup—such as a network-numbering conflict in a port configuration—it can either continue startup, activating *only* ports on which no errors occur, or cancel startup.

By default, the router cancels startup if it encounters an error. If the “Cancel router startup if an error occurs” checkbox is not selected, the router starts up and records the status of its ports in the Router Log, indicating any errors that occur at startup. Any port on which an error occurred remains inactive until you correct the error, then activate the port in its Port Info dialog box.

To cancel router startup if an error occurs, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose Set Startup from the Control menu.**
The Set Startup dialog box appears.
- 2 Select “Cancel router startup if an error occurs,” if it’s not already selected.**
- 3 Click OK.**

Specifying the routing table’s maximum size

The router maintains a routing table that contains the routing information for each destination network on an internet. For detailed information about the routing table, see the section “The Routing Table” in Chapter 9. If you need more memory for other programs running concurrently with the router, you can reduce the size of the routing table—that is, the maximum number of entries that the routing table can contain. Or, to support a greater number of networks on the internet, you can increase the size of the routing table.

To specify the maximum number of entries that the routing table can contain, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose Set Startup from the Control menu.**
The Set Startup dialog box appears. By default, the maximum number of entries that the routing table can contain is 1024.

2 Type a number in the Routing Table Entries text box.

The amount of memory installed in the router Macintosh determines the maximum number of entries that the routing table can contain.

3 Click OK.

The new maximum number of routing table entries takes effect when you next restart the router Macintosh.

Specifying the zone table's maximum size

The router maintains a zone table that contains the zone information for each destination network on an internet. If you need more memory for other programs running concurrently with the router, you can reduce the size of the zone table—that is, the maximum number of entries that the zone table can contain. Or, to support a greater number of zones on the internet, you can increase the size of the zone table.

To specify the maximum number of entries that the zone table can contain, follow these steps:

1 Choose Set Startup from the Control menu.

The Set Startup dialog box appears. By default, the maximum number of entries that the zone table can contain is 256.

2 Type a number in the Zone Table Entries text box.

The amount of memory installed in the router Macintosh determines the maximum number of entries that the zone table can contain.

3 Click OK.

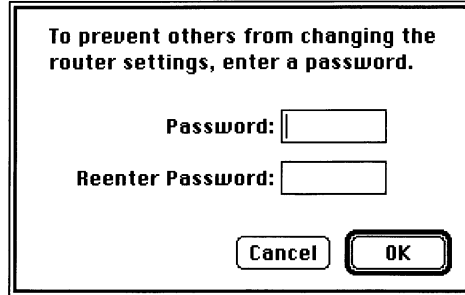
The new maximum number of zone table entries takes effect when you next restart the router Macintosh.

Specifying an administrator's password

To prevent others from opening Router Manager and changing your setup documents or the router's status, you can specify an *administrator's password*.

- 1 Choose Set Password from the Control menu.

The following dialog box appears:



To prevent others from changing the router settings, enter a password.

Password:

Reenter Password:

- 2 Type your password in the Password text box.

A password can have a maximum of eight characters. You can use uppercase and lowercase letters to distinguish passwords. The characters that you type appear as bullets to prevent others from learning your password.

- 3 Press Tab to move to the Reenter Password text box, then type your new password again, exactly as you did the first time.

You must type your password *exactly* as you did before, including your use of uppercase and lowercase letters. Typing your password again confirms that you have entered it correctly.

- 4 Click OK to turn on password protection.

Once you have set an administrator's password, you must thereafter enter your password to open Router Manager to edit a setup document or change the router's status.

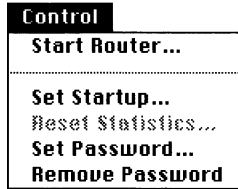
◆ **Note** To prevent others from making unauthorized changes in Router Manager, always quit Router Manager when you are not using it.

Always keep a written record of your password. If you forget your password, you must remove the router software from the startup disk and reinstall the router software. ◆

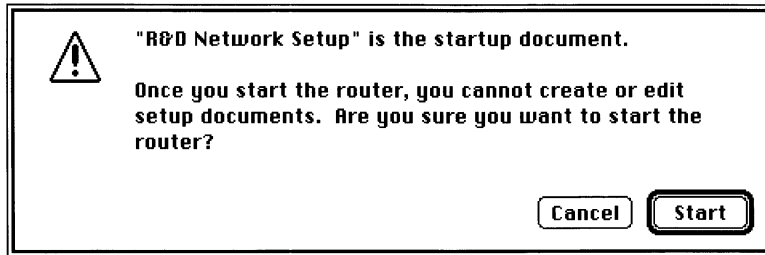
Starting the router

Once you have installed the router, created and saved a setup document, and selected a startup document, you can start the router at any time without restarting the router Macintosh. To start the router, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose Start Router from the Control menu.



The following alert box appears:

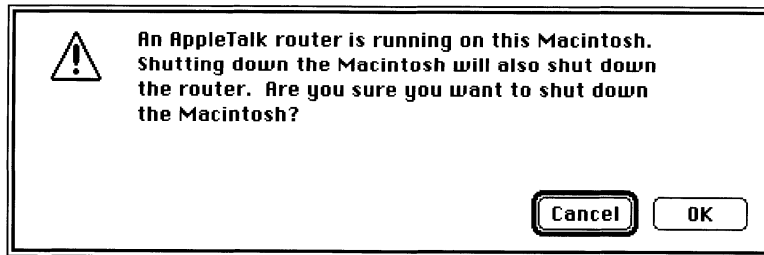


- 2 Click Start to confirm that you want to start the router.

Once the router starts, the Start Router command changes to Stop Router. The router status indicator in the Network control panel indicates that the router is currently on.

When the router is running:

- Opening or quitting Router Manager does not affect router operation. The router runs in the background, independent of the Router Manager application program.
- If you open Router Manager, it displays any windows that were open when Router Manager was last open.
- You cannot edit setup documents.
- You can activate and deactivate ports on the router, as described in the section “Activating and Deactivating Ports” in Chapter 8.
- You should not deactivate AppleTalk in the Chooser.
- If you try shutting down the router Macintosh, the following alert box appears. To confirm that you want to shut down the router Macintosh, click OK.



Quitting Router Manager

The Apple Internet Router runs in the background. You can quit Router Manager after starting the router.

Once you have finished creating setup documents and have configured the startup options for the router, quit Router Manager. To quit Router Manager, choose Quit from the File menu.

4 Configuring an AppleTalk Port

This chapter describes port configuration for three types of AppleTalk ports—LocalTalk, EtherTalk, and TokenTalk—including how to configure the router as a seed router or a nonseed router, and how to hide devices on an internet.

Configuring the router as a seed router or a nonseed router

A *seed router* sends an AppleTalk network's identifying information to all other routers connected directly to that network. You *must* configure at least one router on each AppleTalk network in an internet as a seed router. To configure the router as a seed router for a network, when configuring the port to which that network is connected, designate that port as a seed port and specify the network's identifying information. The sections "Configuring a LocalTalk Port" and "Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port" later in this chapter describe how to configure seed and nonseed ports.

If more than one router is connected to an AppleTalk network, it is necessary to specify this identifying information on only one of the connected routers. However, you can configure more than one router on a network as a seed router.

△ **Important** If more than one router is a seed router for a network, you must specify exactly the same information for that network when configuring the seed port on each seed router connected to that network. △

A router that obtains the network number or network range and the zone name or zone list for an AppleTalk network from a seed router connected to that network is a *nonseed router*. Once you have configured one seed router for a network connected to a port, you can configure any additional routers on the network as either seed or nonseed routers.

A router can be both a seed router and a nonseed router for different networks. Because a router can function as a seed router for some networks and a nonseed router for others, the router's ports are designated as *seed ports* and *nonseed ports*. Figure 4-1 shows both seed routers and nonseed routers on an internet.

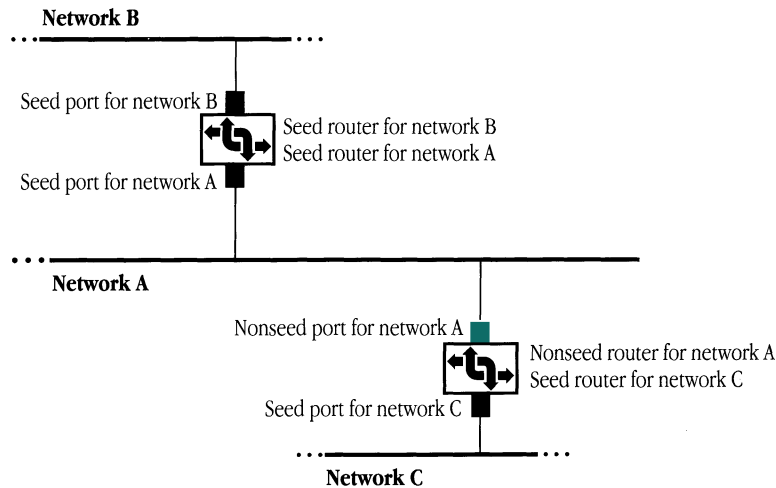


Figure 4-1 Seed and nonseed routers on an internet

Identifying networks on an internet

Networks connected by the router retain separate identities. Each AppleTalk network in an internet must have a unique network number or network range.

- A single *network number* identifies a LocalTalk network.
- A *network range* is a series of contiguous network numbers that identifies any other type of AppleTalk network, such as an EtherTalk or TokenTalk network. A network range can neither include a network number already assigned to another network nor overlap another network range.

Each network in an internet can include a maximum of 253 devices. You can assign up to 253 devices to each network number in a network range. Thus, a network range determines the maximum number of devices on a network. For example, a network having the network range 1–10 could include up to 2530 devices (10×253).

When configuring a seed port on the router, you must assign a unique network number or network range to the network connected to that port. Router Manager prevents you from assigning network numbers or ranges that conflict with those configured for other ports on the router. However, the router cannot detect conflicting network numbers or ranges on other parts of the internet. If you assign a number to a network and that number is different from the number assigned to that network on another seed router, the router will not be able to start. Maintaining an up-to-date map of the networks in your internet, which you can refer to when assigning network numbers or ranges, can help you to avoid assigning duplicate network numbers or overlapping network ranges.

For more detailed information about assigning network numbers and network ranges, see the sections “Configuring a LocalTalk Port” and “Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port” later in this chapter, and “Choosing a Network-Numbering Scheme” and “Specifying Network Ranges” in Appendix A.

Defining AppleTalk zones for a network

When configuring a seed port on the router, you can define one or more AppleTalk zones for the network connected to that port by assigning a zone name or zone list to that network. You *must* define at least one zone for each AppleTalk network in an internet. A LocalTalk network can have *only* one zone. Thus, you can assign only one zone name to a LocalTalk network.

Other types of AppleTalk networks can have multiple zones. Thus, you can assign a zone list to any other type of AppleTalk network. A zone list includes all of the zone names assigned to a network and can consist of a maximum of 255 zone names. You can assign any device on a network to any zone in the zone list for that network. You must include at least one zone name in a zone list. For more detailed information about zone names and zone lists, see the sections “Configuring a LocalTalk Port” and “Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port” later in this chapter, and “Dividing an Internet Into Zones” in Appendix A.

Configuring a LocalTalk port

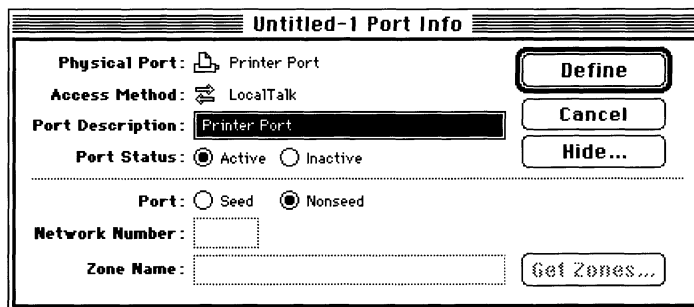
To configure a LocalTalk access method for a printer port or modem port, follow these steps:

- 1 Open a setup document.
- 2 In the setup window, double-click the physical port that you want to configure to display the access methods that are available for that port.

A LocalTalk access method is always available for the modem port and for the printer port.

- 3 Double-click the LocalTalk access method.

The LocalTalk Port Info dialog box appears.



- 4 In the LocalTalk Port Info dialog box, type a port description in the Port Description text box.

The name of the physical port appears in the Port Description text box by default. You can specify an optional port description to help you to identify the network connected to the port. A port description can be up to 31 characters in length and can contain any characters, including the space character.

- 5 Designate the port as a seed port or a nonseed port. To designate the port as a seed port, select the Seed button. To designate the port as a nonseed port, select the Nonseed button.

To configure the LocalTalk port as a seed port, you must assign a network number and a zone name to the network connected to that port.

A port is designated as a nonseed port by default. You can configure a port as a nonseed port *only* if you have already configured a seed router for the network connected to that port. If you configure the LocalTalk port as a nonseed port, the router will obtain the network number and zone name for the network connected to that port from a seed router on the network.

If you are configuring the LocalTalk port as a nonseed port, skip steps 6 and 7.

- 6 If you designated the LocalTalk port as a seed port, type a number in the Network Number text box to assign a number to the network connected to that port.

You can specify a network number as either a decimal number between 1 and 65,279, or a hexadecimal number between \$1 and \$FEFF. In Router Manager, a \$ character must precede hexadecimal numbers.

- △ **Important** A network number must be unique in an internet. Do *not* assign the same network number to more than one network. △

- 7 Type the zone name for the network connected to that port in the Zone Name text box.

A zone name can be up to 32 characters in length and can contain any characters, including the space character. You cannot use uppercase and lowercase letters to distinguish zone names. Thus, you can type a zone name using either uppercase or lowercase letters.

- ◆ **Note** You cannot use a single asterisk (*) character as a zone name. AppleTalk protocols use the asterisk as a wildcard character, signifying “this zone”—that is, the zone in which the sending device resides. ◆

Alternatively, you can select the network’s zone name from a list of connected zones, as described in the next section, “Selecting a Zone Name From a List of Connected Zones.”

- 8 To activate the LocalTalk port, select the Active button. To deactivate the LocalTalk port, select the Inactive button.

When you first configure a port, its status is active by default. When the router is running, it routes data packets through all active ports. You can change the status of the LocalTalk port from active to inactive at any time.

- 9 When you have finished specifying the LocalTalk port information, click Define to close the LocalTalk Port Info dialog box.

Selecting a zone name from a list of connected zones

When configuring a LocalTalk port as a seed port, instead of typing a zone name for the network connected to that port, you can select a zone name from a list of zones. To select a zone name from a list of zones, follow these steps:

- 1 In the LocalTalk Port Info dialog box, click Get Zones.

The Get Zones dialog box appears. It lists all of the zones on the internet connected to the current AppleTalk connection for the router Macintosh.



- 2 In the Get Zones dialog box, select a zone name in the list of connected zones.

When configuring a LocalTalk port, you can select only one zone.

- 3 Click OK.

The name of the zone selected appears in the Zone Name text box in the LocalTalk Port Info dialog box.

Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk port

To configure an EtherTalk access method for an Ethernet port or a TokenTalk access method for a Token Ring port, follow these steps:

- 1 Open a setup document.
- 2 In the setup window, double-click the Ethernet or Token Ring port that you want to configure to display the access methods that are available for that port.

An EtherTalk access method is available whenever an Ethernet port is present on the router Macintosh. A TokenTalk access method is available whenever a Token Ring port is present.

- 3 Double-click the EtherTalk or TokenTalk access method.

The EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port Info dialog box appears. The following figure shows an EtherTalk Port Info dialog box.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Untitled-1 Port Info". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Physical Port:** A dropdown menu showing "Ethernet".
- Access Method:** A dropdown menu showing "EtherTalk".
- Port Description:** A text field containing "Ethernet".
- Port Status:** Two radio buttons: "Active" (selected) and "Inactive".
- Port:** Two radio buttons: "Seed" and "Nonseed" (selected).
- Network Range:** Two text boxes for "to:" and "from:".
- Zone List:** A list box with up and down arrows on the right. To the right of the list box are buttons: "Get Zones...", "Remove", "Rename", "Add", and "Set Default".
- Zone Name:** A text field.
- Default Zone:** A text field.

- 4 In the EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port Info dialog box, type a port description in the Port Description text box.

The name of the physical port appears in the Port Description text box by default. You can specify an optional port description to help you to identify the network connected to the port. A port description can be up to 31 characters in length and can contain any characters, including the space character.

- 5 Designate the port as a seed port or a nonseed port. To designate the port as a seed port, select the Seed button. To designate the port as a nonseed port, select the Nonseed button.

To configure the EtherTalk or TokenTalk port as a seed port, you must assign a network range and a zone list to the network connected to that port.

A port is designated as a nonseed port by default. You can configure a port as a nonseed port *only* if a seed router has already been configured for the network connected to that port. If you configure the EtherTalk or TokenTalk port as a nonseed port, the router will obtain the network range and zone list for the network connected to that port from a seed router on the network.

If you are configuring the EtherTalk or TokenTalk port as a nonseed port, skip steps 6 and 7.

- 6 If you designated the EtherTalk or TokenTalk port as a seed port, type the lowest network number in the network range for the network connected to that port in the Network Range text box and the highest network number in the network range in the “to” text box.

 **Important** A network range must be unique in an internet. It can neither include a network number already assigned to another network nor overlap another network range. 

A network range must consist of a series of contiguous network numbers. You can specify a network range as two decimal numbers between 1 and 65,279, or two hexadecimal numbers between \$1 and \$FEFF. In Router Manager, a \$ character must precede hexadecimal numbers. If you don't expect a network to grow beyond 253 devices, you can assign a single network number to a range—for example, you can specify a network range from 14 to 14.

- 7 Type a zone name in the Zone Name text box, then click Add to add the zone name to the zone list for the network connected to that port.

You *must* add at least one zone name to the zone list. A zone name can be up to 32 characters in length and can contain any characters, including the space character. You cannot use uppercase and lowercase letters to distinguish zone names. Thus, you can type a zone name using either uppercase or lowercase letters.

◆ **Note** You cannot use a single asterisk (*) character as a zone name. AppleTalk protocols use the asterisk as a wildcard character, signifying “this zone”—that is, the zone in which the sending device resides. ◆

You can add zone names to the zone list in any order. Repeat this step until you have added all of the network’s zone names to the zone list. A zone list can consist of a maximum of 255 zone names.

Alternatively, you can select zone names to be included in the zone list from a list of connected zones, as described in the next section, “Including Names of Connected Zones in the Zone List.”

You can rename a zone in the zone list or remove a zone name from the zone list, as described in the sections “Renaming a Zone in the Zone List” and “Removing a Zone Name from the Zone List” later in this chapter. You can also set a default zone for the network connected to the port, as described in the section “Setting the Default Zone for the Network” later in this chapter.

- 8 To activate the EtherTalk or TokenTalk port, select the Active button. To deactivate the EtherTalk or TokenTalk port, select the Inactive button.

When you first configure a port, its status is active by default. When the router is running, it routes data packets through all active ports. You can change the status of the port from active to inactive at any time.

- 9 When you have finished specifying the EtherTalk or TokenTalk port information, click Define to close the Port Info dialog box.

Adding names from a list of connected zones to the zone list

When configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk port as a seed port, instead of typing each zone name, you can select one or more zone names from a list of zones on the internet connected to the router's current AppleTalk connection, and add them to the zone list for the network connected to that port. Follow these steps to add the zone names to the zone list:

- 1 In the EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port Info dialog box, click Get Zones.**
The Get Zones dialog box appears. It lists all of the zones on the internet connected to the current AppleTalk connection for the router Macintosh.
- 2 In the Get Zones dialog box, select one or more zone names in the list of connected zones.**
Shift-click to select multiple zone names.
- 3 Click OK.**
The zone names selected appear in the zone list in the EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port Info dialog box.

Renaming a zone in the zone list

When configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk port as a seed port, follow these steps to rename a zone in the zone list:

- 1 In the EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port Info dialog box, select the name of a zone in the zone list.**
The name appears in the Zone Name text box.
- 2 Type the new name for the zone in the Zone Name text box.**
- 3 Click Rename.**
The new name replaces the old name in the zone list.

Removing a zone name from the zone list

When configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk port as a seed port, follow these steps to remove a zone name from the zone list:

- 1 In the EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port Info dialog box, select the name of a zone in the zone list.

The name appears in the Zone Name text box.

- 2 Click Remove.

The zone name no longer appears in the zone list.

◆ **Note** If you remove the default zone from the zone list, the first name in the zone list becomes the default zone. ◆

Setting the default zone

When configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk port as a seed port, you can designate a default zone for the network connected to that port. The first zone that you add to the zone list for the network connected to the port automatically becomes the default zone for that network. The router automatically assigns each device in that network to the default zone. A device assigned to the default zone resides in that zone until another zone is selected for the device.

To change the default zone for the connected network, follow these steps:

- 1 In the EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port Info dialog box, select a zone name in the zone list.
- 2 Click Set Default.

The zone selected becomes the default zone.

Hiding devices on an internet

Large internets—for example, local area networks (LANs) that span more than one department or wide area networks (WANs) that span more than one organization—may require device-level security. You can achieve device-level security by configuring *device hiding* on AppleTalk ports.

When configuring an AppleTalk port on the router, you can specify that certain devices on the network or internet connected to that port be hidden from only *one* other port or *all* other ports on the router. Thus, you can prevent devices on a specific part of the internet or on all other parts of the internet from accessing the devices for which you specify device hiding.

You can hide any device on the part of the internet that is connected to an AppleTalk port. A device need not be on the network that is connected directly to that port. As Figure 4-2 shows, a hidden device does not appear in the Chooser on computers that are on the part of the internet from which the device is hidden. However, a hidden device still has access to devices on the part of the internet from which it is hidden—that is, those devices appear in the Chooser on the hidden device.

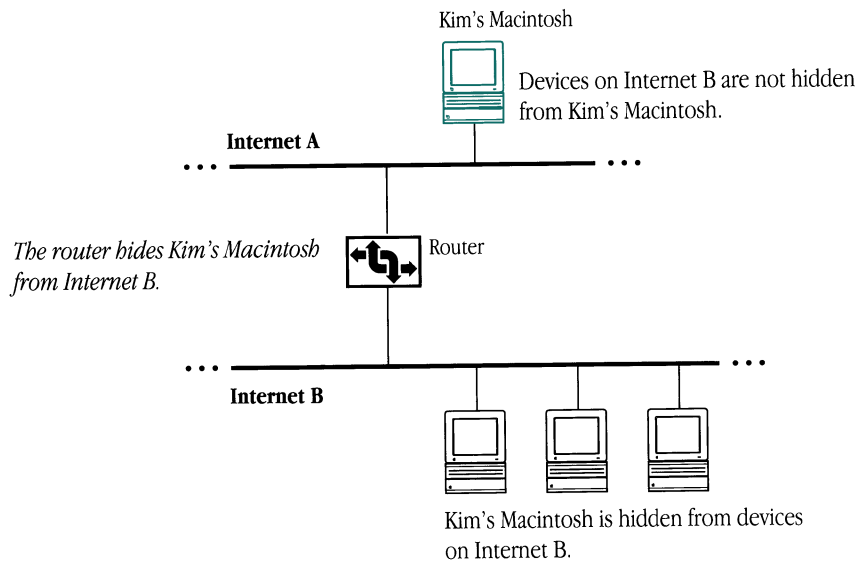


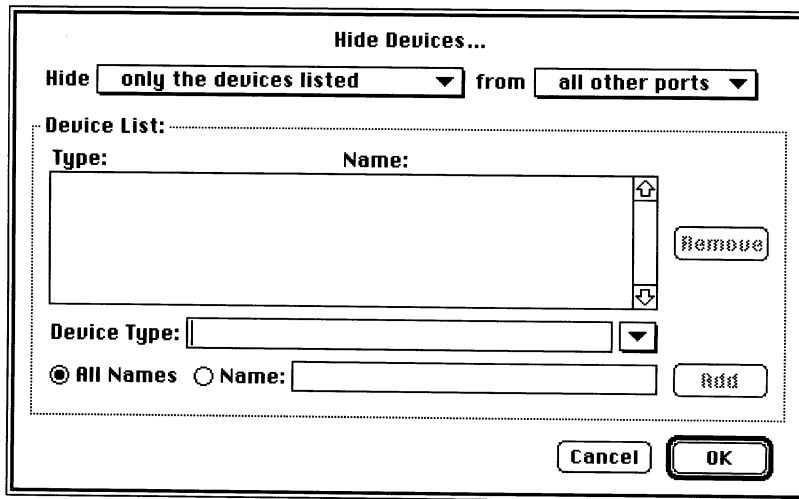
Figure 4-2 Device hiding

- △ **Important** If you want to hide a device and more than one path connects the device and the part of the internet from which you want to hide the device, you must hide the device on a router on each path that connects the device and the internet from which you want to hide the device. △

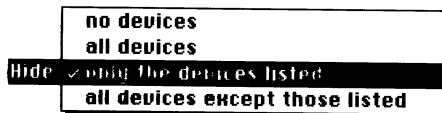
To hide devices connected to an AppleTalk port, follow these steps:

- 1 In the Port Info dialog box for an AppleTalk port, click Hide.

The Hide Devices dialog box appears.



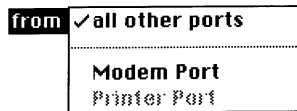
- 2 In the Hide Devices dialog box, select an option in the Hide pop-up menu to specify whether devices are to be hidden and how to list the devices.



In the Hide pop-up menu, “only the devices listed” is selected by default. If you select “all devices except those listed,” the devices that you add to the device list will appear in the Chooser.

If you selected “no devices,” skip steps 3 and 4.

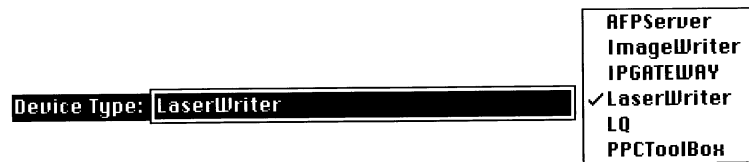
- 3 Select an option in the “from” pop-up menu to specify whether the devices are to be hidden from all other ports or from a specific port.



To hide devices from all ports, select “all other ports” in the “from” pop-up menu. All configured ports on the router appear in the “from” pop-up menu. To hide devices from a specific port, select that port in the “from” pop-up menu.

If you selected “all devices” in step 2, skip steps 4 through 7.

- 4 Select an option in the Device Type pop-up menu to specify the type of device to be hidden, or type a specific device type in the Device Type text box.



The Device Type pop-up menu contains the device types found on the network connected to the current AppleTalk connection for the router Macintosh. Some standard device types always appear in the Device Type pop-up menu. The use of uppercase and lowercase letters does not distinguish device types. Thus, you can type a device type in the Device Type text box using either uppercase or lowercase letters.

- 5 Select the Name button and type a device name in the Name text box to hide a specific device of a specific type, or select the All Names button to hide all devices of that type.

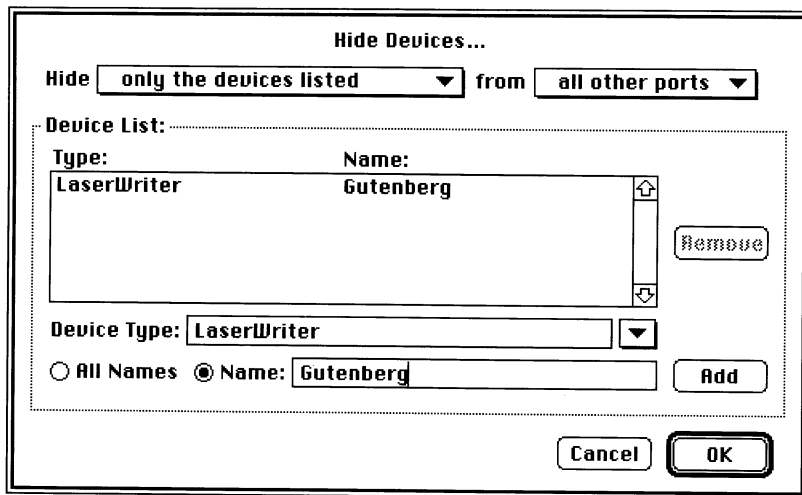
You *cannot* use uppercase and lowercase letters to distinguish device names. Thus, you can type a device name in the Name text box using either uppercase or lowercase letters.

- 6 Click Add.

Depending on the selection that you made in the previous step, one of the following appears in the device list:

- a device type and the name of a specific device
- a device type and “<All >”

As the example in the following figure shows, you could specify that a device of the type *LaserWriter* with the name *Gutenberg* be hidden from all other ports on the router.



- 7 To hide additional devices of specific types, repeat steps 4 through 6 for each device type.

- 8 Click OK.

5 Half-Routing

A *half-router* is a router that connects two remote AppleTalk networks or internets. You can achieve wide area connectivity through *half-routing*, in which two half-routers connect two remote AppleTalk networks or internets over a point-to-point link. A *point-to-point link* is a communications path that may consist of two modems communicating over a standard telephone line or a leased line. This chapter explains how to set up a half-routing port to originate a connection, answer to establish a connection, or call back to establish a connection.

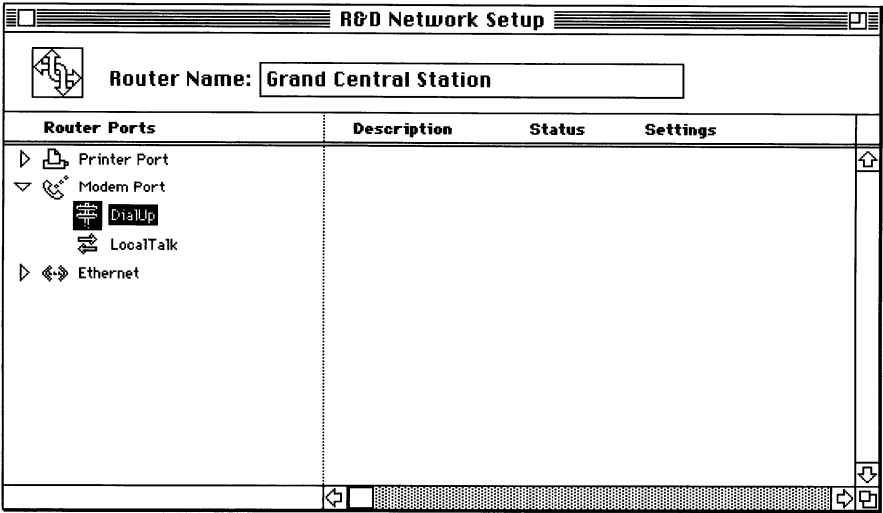
For information about configuring an X.25 port to establish point-to-point links between remote AppleTalk networks or internets, see *Using the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension*.

Configuring a half-routing port

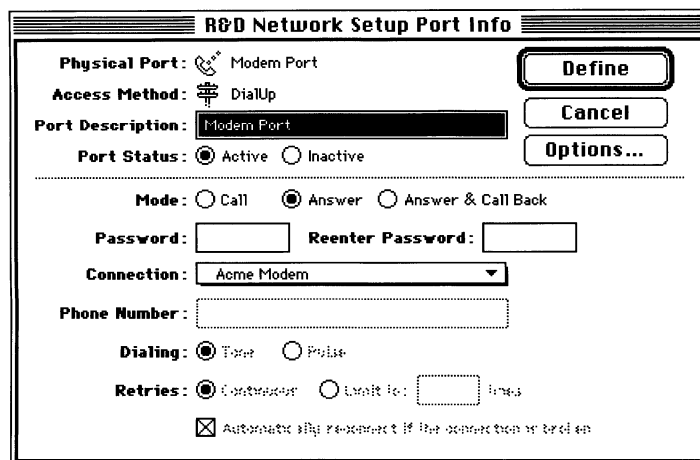
To configure a half-routing port, follow these steps:

- 1 Open a setup document.
- 2 In the setup window, double-click the physical port that you want to configure to display the access methods that are available for that port.

A DialUp access method is available for the printer port and the modem port. The following figure shows a setup window with DialUp selected.



- 3 Double-click a DialUp access method to open a DialUp Port Info dialog box.
- A DialUp Port Info dialog box appears.



The image shows a dialog box titled "R&D Network Setup Port Info". It contains the following fields and options:

- Physical Port:** Modem Port (with a modem icon)
- Access Method:** DialUp (with a dialup icon)
- Port Description:** Modem Port (text box)
- Port Status:** ☒ Active ☐ Inactive
- Mode:** ☐ Call ☒ Answer ☐ Answer & Call Back
- Password:** (text box) **Reenter Password:** (text box)
- Connection:** Acme Modem (dropdown menu)
- Phone Number:** (text box)
- Dialing:** ☒ Tone ☐ Pulse
- Retries:** ☒ Continuous ☐ Limit to: (text box) times
- ☒ Automatic retry request if the connection is not ok

Buttons on the right: Define, Cancel, Options...

4 In the DialUp Port Info dialog box, type a port description in the Port Description text box.

The name of the physical port appears in the Port Description text box by default. You can specify an optional port description to help you to identify the network connected to the port. A port description can be a maximum of 31 characters in length and can contain any characters, including the space character.

Depending on the method that you want to use to establish a connection, follow the instructions in one of the subsequent sections to complete the half-routing port configuration:

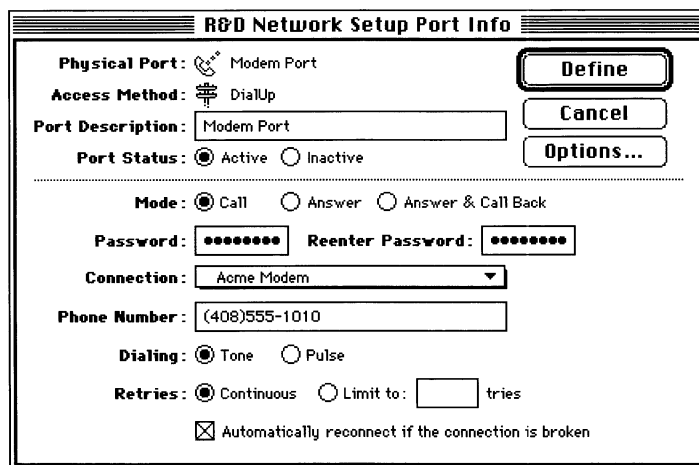
- See the section “Originating a Connection” to learn how to originate a connection.
- See the section “Answering to Establish a Connection” to learn how to answer to establish a connection.
- See the section “Calling Back to Establish a Connection” to learn how to call back to establish a connection.

Originating a connection

Using a modem, you can call another exterior router to establish a connection. To configure the half-routing port to originate a connection, follow these steps:

- 1 In the DialUp Port Info dialog box, click the Call button to select that mode.

The options shown in the following figure appear in the DialUp Port Info dialog box. The figure shows a half-routing port configured to originate a connection.



The image shows a dialog box titled "R&D Network Setup Port Info". It contains the following fields and options:

- Physical Port:** Modem Port (with a modem icon)
- Access Method:** DialUp (with a telephone icon)
- Port Description:** Modem Port (text box)
- Port Status:** ☒ Active ☐ Inactive
- Mode:** ☒ Call ☐ Answer ☐ Answer & Call Back
- Password:** [password box with 8 bullets] **Reenter Password:** [password box with 8 bullets]
- Connection:** Acme Modem (dropdown menu)
- Phone Number:** (408)555-1010 (text box)
- Dialing:** ☒ Tone ☐ Pulse
- Retries:** ☒ Continuous ☐ Limit to: [] tries
- ☒ Automatically reconnect if the connection is broken

Buttons: Define, Cancel, Options...

- 2 Type your password in the Password text box.

You can provide greater security on your WAN by using an optional password on half-routing links. The half-router originating the connection sends the password across the link to another half-router. That half-router verifies the password before establishing a connection with the half-router originating the connection.

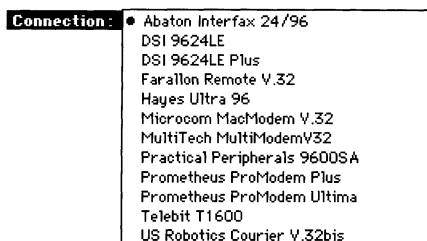
A password can have a maximum of eight characters. You can use uppercase and lowercase letters to distinguish passwords.

When you type your password in the Password text box, the characters that you type appear as bullets to prevent others from learning your password.

- 3 Press Tab, then type your password again in the Reenter Password text box, exactly as you did the first time, to verify that you entered the password correctly.

You must type your password *exactly* as you did before, including your use of uppercase and lowercase letters. Typing your password again confirms that you have entered it correctly.

- 4 Select a modem connected to the router Macintosh in the Connection pop-up menu.



The Apple Internet Router supports half-routing links using various asynchronous modems that transmit data at rates of 9600 bits per second (bps) or greater. You can connect a modem to either the modem port or the printer port.

- 5 Type the phone number that you are calling in the Phone Number text box.
- 6 Click the Tone button to select tone dialing. Or, to select pulse dialing, click the Pulse button.
- 7 To select continuous retries, click the Continuous button. Or, to limit the number of retries, click the “Limit to” button, then type the number of tries in the text box.
If you select continuous retries, the router will redial until it makes a connection.
- 8 To allow automatic reconnection if the modem loses a connection, click the “Automatically reconnect if the connection is broken” checkbox to select it.

- 9 To activate the DialUp port, select the Active button. To deactivate the DialUp port, select the Inactive button.

When you first configure a port, its status is active by default. When the router is running, it routes data packets through all active ports. You can change the status of the DialUp port from active to inactive at any time.

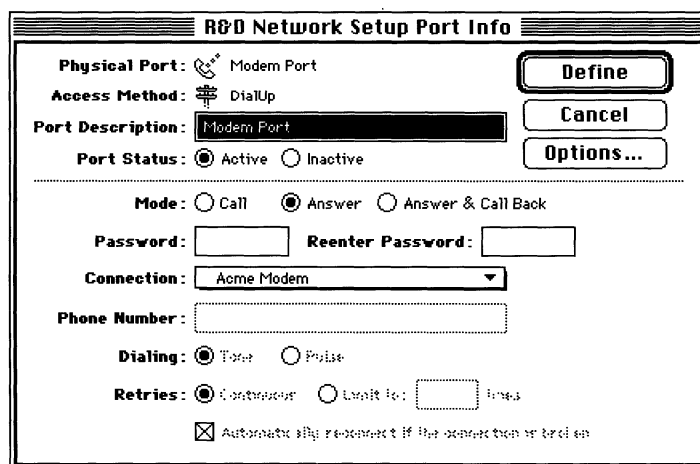
- 10 When you have finished specifying the DialUp port information, click Define to close the DialUp Port Info dialog box.

Answering to establish a connection

To configure the half-routing port to answer a call from another router to establish a connection, follow these steps:

- 1 In the DialUp Port Info dialog box, click the Answer button to select that mode.

The options shown in the following figure appear in the DialUp Port Info dialog box. The figure shows a half-routing port configured to answer to establish a connection.



The image shows a dialog box titled "R&D Network Setup Port Info". It contains the following fields and options:

- Physical Port:** Modem Port
- Access Method:** DialUp
- Port Description:** Modem Port
- Port Status:** ☒ Active ☐ Inactive
- Mode:** ☐ Call ☒ Answer ☐ Answer & Call Back
- Password:** [text box] **Reenter Password:** [text box]
- Connection:** Acme Modem (dropdown menu)
- Phone Number:** [text box]
- Dialing:** ☒ Tone ☐ Pulse
- Retries:** ☒ Continue ☐ Wait for: [text box] times
- ☒ Automatically reconnect if the connection is broken

Buttons: Define, Cancel, Options...

2 Type the caller's password in the Password text box.

You can use an optional password on a half-routing link. The calling half-router sends the password across a link to the answering half-router, which verifies the password before establishing a connection with the calling half-router.

A caller's password can have a maximum of eight characters. You can use uppercase and lowercase letters to distinguish passwords. You must type a caller's password *exactly* as it was specified, including the use of uppercase and lowercase letters.

When you type the caller's password in the Password text box, the characters that you type appear as bullets to prevent others from learning your password.

3 Press Tab, then type the caller's password again in the Reenter Password text box, exactly as you did the first time, to verify that you have entered the password correctly.

You must type the caller's password *exactly* as you did before, including the use of uppercase and lowercase letters. Typing the password again confirms that you have entered it correctly.

4 Select a modem connected to the router Macintosh in the Connection pop-up menu.

The Apple Internet Router supports half-routing links using various asynchronous modems that transmit data at rates of 9600 bits per second (bps) or greater. You can connect a modem to either the modem port or the printer port.

5 To activate the DialUp port, select the Active button. To deactivate the DialUp port, select the Inactive button.

When you first configure a port, its status is active by default. When the router is running, it routes data packets through all active ports. You can change the status of the DialUp port from active to inactive at any time.

6 When you have finished specifying the DialUp port information, click Define to close the DialUp Port Info dialog box.

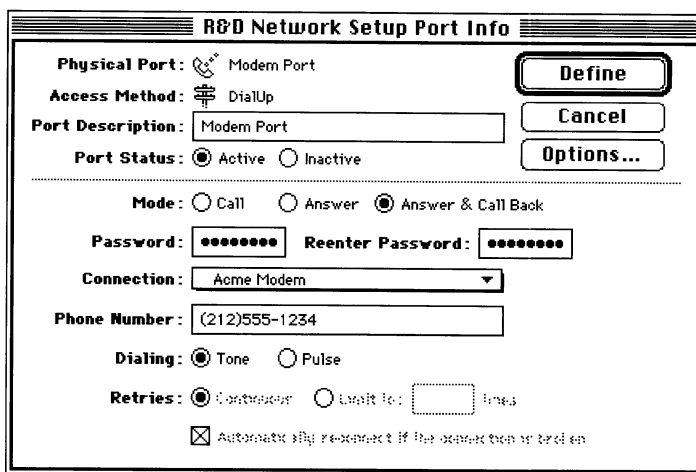
Calling back to establish a connection

To provide greater security on your WAN, the router can call back a router that is calling to establish a connection. If you specify the answer-and-call-back mode, when the router answers a call from another router, it verifies the caller's password, if any, then hangs up and calls back the calling router to establish the connection.

To call back a router to establish a connection, follow these steps:

- 1 In the DialUp Port Info dialog box, click the Answer & Call Back button to select that mode.

The options shown in the following figure appear in the DialUp Port Info dialog box. The figure shows a half-routing port configured to answer and call back to establish a connection.



The image shows a dialog box titled "R&D Network Setup Port Info". It contains several fields and options for configuring a port. At the top, there are three buttons: "Define", "Cancel", and "Options...". The "Define" button is highlighted with a red border. Below the buttons, the "Physical Port" is set to "Modem Port". The "Access Method" is set to "DialUp". The "Port Description" is set to "Modem Port". The "Port Status" has two radio buttons: "Active" (selected) and "Inactive". Below this, the "Mode" has three radio buttons: "Call", "Answer", and "Answer & Call Back" (selected). The "Password" and "Reenter Password" fields are both filled with eight dots. The "Connection" dropdown menu is set to "Acme Modem". The "Phone Number" field is set to "(212)555-1234". The "Dialing" has two radio buttons: "Tone" (selected) and "Pulse". The "Retries" has two radio buttons: "Continue" (selected) and "Limit To:" followed by a text box containing "1" and the word "times". At the bottom, there is a checkbox labeled "Automatically reconnect if the connection is broken" which is checked.

- 2 Type your password in the Password text box.

You can use an optional password on a half-routing link. The calling half-router sends the password across a link to the answering half-router, which verifies the password before establishing a connection with the calling half-router.

A caller's password can have a maximum of eight characters. You can use uppercase and lowercase letters to distinguish passwords. You must type a caller's password *exactly* as it was specified, including the use of uppercase and lowercase letters.

When you type the caller's password in the Password text box, the characters that you type appear as bullets to prevent others from learning your password.

- 3** Press Tab, then type your password again in the Reenter Password text box, exactly as you did the first time, to verify that you entered the password correctly.

You must type the caller's password *exactly* as you did before, including the use of uppercase and lowercase letters. Typing the password again confirms that you have entered it correctly.

- 4** Type the phone number of the calling router in the Phone Number text box.

- 5** To select tone dialing, click the Tone button. Or, to select pulse dialing, click the Pulse button.

- 6** To activate the DialUp port, select the Active button. To deactivate the DialUp port, select the Inactive button.

When you first configure a port, its status is active by default. When the router is running, it routes data packets through all active ports. You can change the status of the DialUp port from active to inactive at any time.

- 7** When you have finished specifying the DialUp port information, click Define to close the DialUp Port Info dialog box.

6 Tunneling Through Foreign Network Systems

Tunneling allows you to connect two or more native local area networks (LANs) or internets through a foreign network system or half-routing link, providing wide area connectivity. The Apple Internet Router allows *native* networks or internets, which communicate using AppleTalk protocols, to connect with one another through a tunnel built on a *foreign network system*, which uses some other protocol family. This chapter provides a general description of the tunneling capabilities of the Apple Internet Router.

The AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension, which you can purchase separately, allows two or more AppleTalk networks or internets to communicate through a tunnel built on a TCP/IP network. For information about configuring an IP tunneling port, see *Using the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension*.

A *tunnel* connecting AppleTalk networks or internets functions as a single virtual data link between those networks or internets. Figure 6-1 shows several AppleTalk internets connected with one another through a tunnel.

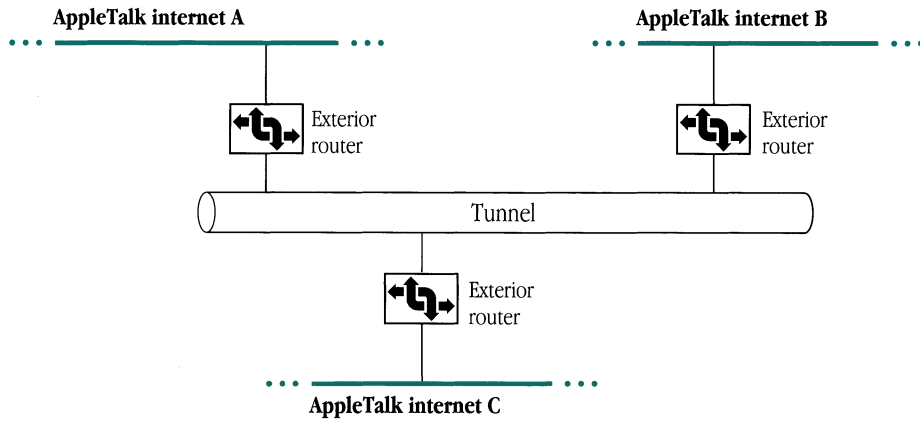


Figure 6-1 Tunneling

Exterior routers

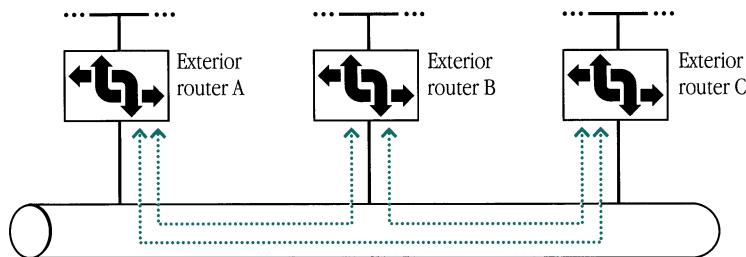
An *exterior router* is an AppleTalk router with one or more ports connected to an AppleTalk network or internet, *and* one or more ports connected to either a foreign network system or a half-routing link. Thus, an exterior router is a node on both an AppleTalk network or internet, and on a foreign network system. In Figure 6-1, an exterior router connects each AppleTalk internet to the tunnel, allowing the AppleTalk internets to communicate with one another through the tunnel. Exterior routers use a foreign network system *only* to connect with one another and do not provide connectivity to the foreign network system.

An exterior router first encapsulates AppleTalk packets in packets for a foreign network system, then sends those packets through the foreign network system to the exterior router that is the next forwarding router. That exterior router decapsulates the packets, then forwards them to their destination AppleTalk networks.

Fully connected and partially connected tunnels

Generally, all exterior routers on a tunnel through a foreign network system can communicate with one another. An exterior router on a tunnel sends the routing information for *only* its local internet to other exterior routers on the tunnel. It does not forward routing information obtained from other exterior routers on the tunnel, because the other exterior routers exchange their own routing information.

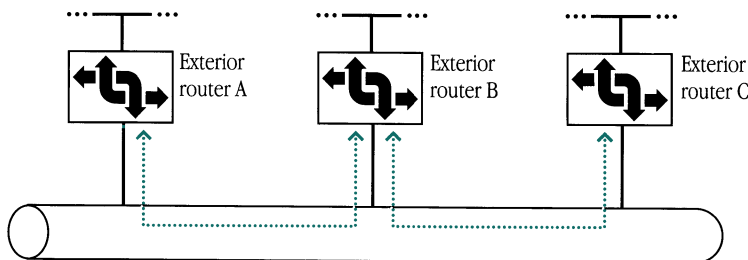
If all exterior routers connected to a tunnel are aware of and can communicate with one another, that tunnel is *fully connected*. Figure 6-2 shows a fully connected tunnel on which all of the connected exterior routers can communicate.



The arrows show which exterior routers can communicate with one another.

Figure 6-2 A fully connected tunnel

If some of the exterior routers on a tunnel *cannot* communicate with one another, that tunnel is only *partially connected*. For example, in Figure 6-3, exterior router A and exterior router C cannot communicate with one another.



The arrows show which exterior routers can communicate with one another.

Figure 6-3 A partially connected tunnel

You can create a partially connected tunnel to provide network-level security. However, it is also possible to create a partially connected tunnel inadvertently. An exterior router cannot ascertain whether a tunnel is fully connected or partially connected. If networks that should be present on the internet are not listed in the Network Information window in Router Manager, see Chapter 10, “Troubleshooting.”

7 Configuring the Wide Area Routing Options

This chapter describes some of the wide area routing capabilities of the Apple Internet Router. It explains how to configure a half-routing or tunneling port to

- resolve numbering conflicts by remapping remote network numbers
- cluster remapped network numbers
- allow routing distances greater than 15 hops
- cause network traffic to traverse a redundant path, by designating a port as a backup path or by increasing the routing distance through a port
- hide networks

Resolving numbering conflicts by remapping remote network numbers

Each network in a wide area network (WAN) must have a unique network number or range. While a half-routing link or tunnel may connect different parts of a single organization's internet, it often connects an internet that spans many different organizations. If each organization on a large, global WAN administrates its internet independently, conflicting network numbers or ranges may exist. The Apple Internet Router can automatically remap remote network numbers or ranges on half-routing and tunneling ports to resolve network-numbering conflicts. Thus, if network-number remapping is enabled, you need not reconfigure the network numbers or ranges on either part of the internet to resolve network-numbering conflicts.

When configuring a half-routing or tunneling port, you can specify a range of AppleTalk network numbers into which the router can remap the network numbers or ranges for networks accessible through that port. This *remapping range*—the range of network numbers reserved for network-number remapping—must not conflict with any network numbers or ranges already in use on the router's local internet. The router maps the network numbers or ranges in incoming data packets into the remapping range, then maps remapped network numbers or ranges in outgoing packets back to their actual network numbers or ranges. To routers and other devices within the router's local internet, the packets seem to originate from networks having numbers in the remapping range.

To prevent routers that connect networks that have conflicting network numbers or ranges from encountering network-numbering conflicts, you must configure *all* exterior routers to remap network numbers.

△ **Important** Avoid creating an internet layout in which redundant paths exist between two internets that are connected through a half-routing or tunneling port on which network-number remapping is enabled. *Redundant paths* exist when a router in one internet is connected to a router in another internet and both internets are connected through a third router, as shown in Figure 7-1. If no redundant paths exist, the router will activate the port when it starts up and the port will remain active.

At startup, if the router detects that the activation of a tunneling port on which network-number remapping is enabled would create a routing loop, it prevents that port from being

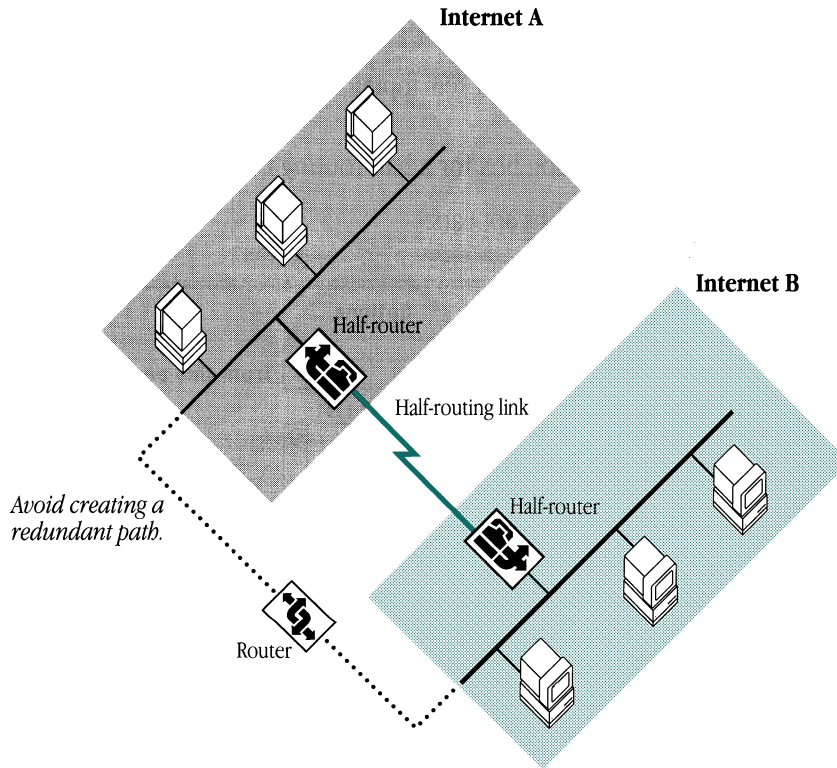


Figure 7-1 Avoiding redundant paths on tunneling ports

activated. If the router detects a loop while the router is running and network-number remapping is enabled on the tunneling port creating the loop, it deactivates that port. This prevents any packets containing remapped network numbers from looping back to the router that originally remapped those network numbers. If this occurred, it would appear to the remapping router that the remapped network numbers identified other networks. Occasionally, when clustering is also active, a router may be unable to detect a loop. For information about clustering, see the section “Clustering Remapped Networks” later in this chapter.

If the router allowed a port on which network-number remapping were enabled to create a loop, when that router received packets containing remapped network numbers, it would remap the network numbers again and again, until the number of times the packets containing the remapped network numbers traversed the loop had exceeded the maximum routing distance of 15 hops. △

Remapping remote network numbers

To turn on network-number remapping, follow these steps:

- 1 In the Port Info dialog box for a half-routing or tunneling port, click Options.
The Options dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Options...' dialog box. It has two main sections. The first section, 'Network Hiding:', contains a 'Hide' dropdown menu set to 'only the networks listed' and a 'from this port' label. Below this is a 'Network List:' area with an empty list box, up and down arrow buttons, a 'Remove' button, and a 'Network range starting with:' text box with an 'Add' button. The second section, 'Network-Number Remapping:', contains a checked checkbox for 'Remap remote network numbers into range:' with input fields for '36000' and '37000'. It also has a checked checkbox for 'Cluster remapped networks' and an unchecked checkbox for 'Allow more than 15 hops'. At the bottom, there are two unchecked checkboxes: 'Use this port only as a backup path' and 'Increase routing distance by:' followed by an empty text box and the word 'hops'. 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons are at the bottom right.

- 2 Select the “Remap remote network numbers into range” checkbox to turn on network-number remapping.

Once you turn on network-number remapping, you must specify a range of network numbers into which remote network numbers are to be remapped.

To turn off network-number remapping, deselect the “Remap remote network numbers into range” checkbox. If you are turning network-number remapping off, skip steps 3 and 4.

- 3 Type the lowest network number in the range in the “Remap remote network numbers into range” text box.
- 4 Type the highest network number in the range in the “to” text box.
- 5 Click OK.

Clustering remapped network numbers

Each router on an internet broadcasts a routing table for each of its AppleTalk ports at ten-second intervals, allowing the other routers on the internet to update their routing information. For detailed information about the contents of a routing table, see the section “The Routing Table” in Chapter 9.

Broadcasting the routing tables for a large wide area internet—which might consist of thousands of networks—would generate a significant amount of traffic on the local internet. Therefore, within its local internet, an exterior router can represent remapped network numbers for a remote internet connected through a half-routing or tunneling port as a *cluster*, or a single extended network consisting of multiple zones. A cluster requires only *one* entry in a routing table. Thus, clustering minimizes the amount of *routing traffic* generated on the local internet—that is, traffic caused by the broadcasting of routing information—by devices on networks connected through half-routing or tunneling ports. Clustering also minimizes storage requirements for routing information on other routers on the local internet.

A router on which clustering is enabled automatically clusters remapped networks in an internet. For example, a router might create one cluster for each other router connected to a half-routing link or tunnel. A cluster can include up to 255 zones.

As shown in Figure 7-2, if networks in an internet had the network ranges 1–10, 100–200, and 1000–1005, and a router connected to a different part of the internet received these network ranges through a half-routing or tunneling port, that router might remap these network ranges to 241–250, 251–351, and 352–357, respectively. Within its local internet, the remapping router might then represent the three networks as a single extended network, or cluster, with a network range from 241 to 357. The router would associate all of the zones in the three networks with the cluster.

Half-router B remaps, then clusters these network ranges.

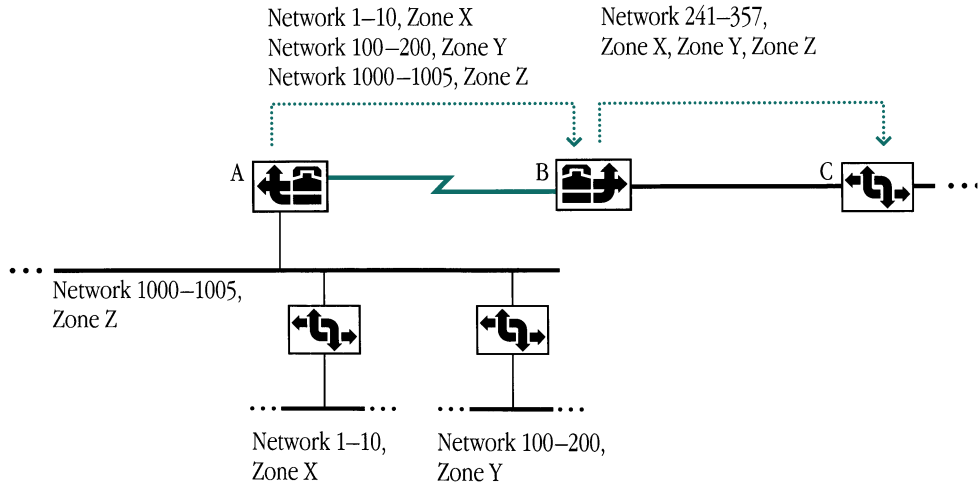


Figure 7-2 Clustering remapped network numbers

To turn on clustering, follow these steps:

- 1 In the Port Info dialog box for a half-routing or tunneling port on which network-number remapping is enabled, click Options.

The Options dialog box appears.

- 2 Select the “Cluster remapped networks” checkbox to turn on clustering.

To turn off clustering, deselect the “Cluster remapped networks” checkbox.

- 3 Click OK.

Some constraints exist on clustering:

- You can cluster *only* remapped network numbers. If noncontiguous network numbers—for example, 1, 1001, and 20345—were not remapped before being clustered, all other numbers within the existing range of numbers would remain unused.
- All networks in a cluster appear to be the same number of hops away.

- The routing information for a cluster is static. Thus, if a network that is part of a cluster is disconnected or goes down, the router cannot update the zone list for the cluster. The zones for a network that is no longer on the internet would appear in the zone list until all of the networks in that cluster either were disconnected or went down.
- All networks accessible through a half-routing or tunneling port might *not* be in the same cluster. Generally, all networks that are accessible when the router establishes a half-routing link or tunnel are in one cluster. However, networks that become accessible later will be in a different cluster.

Allowing routing distances greater than 15 hops

The distance between two networks in an internet is measured in *hops*. Each hop corresponds to a router. A *hop count* indicates the number of routers through which a data packet must pass to reach its destination network, as illustrated in Figure 7-3.

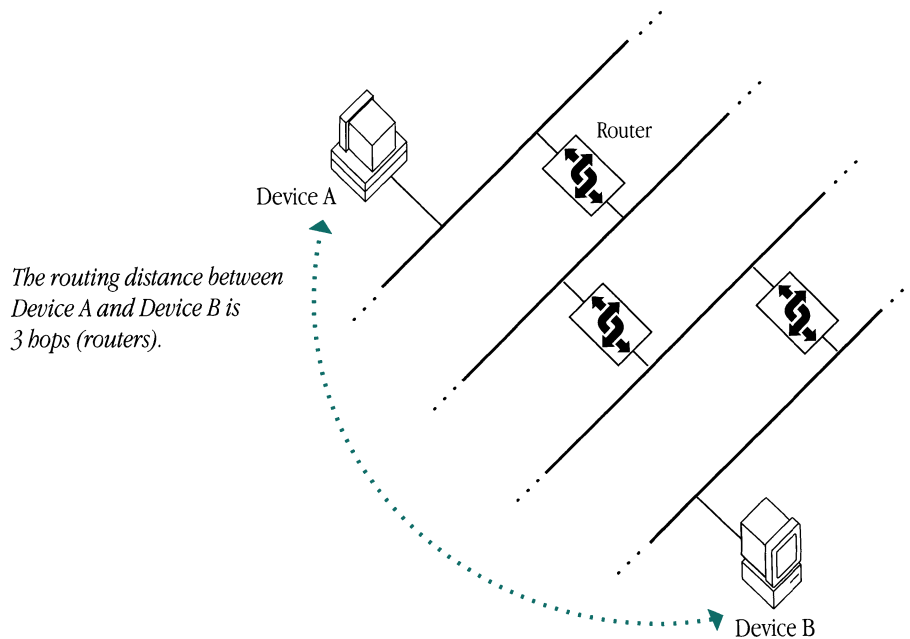


Figure 7-3 Measuring routing distances in hops

AppleTalk protocols allow a maximum of 15 hops. When a half-router or a tunnel connects two networks, the distance over which the resulting internet extends can easily exceed 15 hops. To allow the creation of larger internets, you can configure a half-routing or tunneling port on which network-number remapping is enabled to allow routing distances greater than 15 hops through *hop-count reduction*. When hop-count reduction is enabled on a port, all networks accessible out that port appear to be *one* hop away from all AppleTalk networks in the router's local internet.

◆ **Note** To ensure the proper operation of network-number remapping and hop-count reduction, no routing loops can exist across the affected link. The router prevents loops when network-number remapping is enabled. Therefore, whenever network-number remapping is enabled, an exterior router can perform hop-count reduction without any risk of a data packet being forwarded in an infinite routing loop. Hop-count reduction is available *only* when network-number remapping is enabled on a half-routing or tunneling port. ◆

To allow more than 15 hops, follow these steps:

- 1** In the Port Info dialog box for a half-routing or tunneling port on which network-number remapping is enabled, click Options.
The Options dialog box appears.
- 2** Select the “Allow more than 15 hops” checkbox to turn on hop-count reduction.
To turn off hop-count reduction, deselect the “Allow more than 15 hops” checkbox.
- 3** Click OK.

Using redundant paths

Generally, communication over half-routing links or tunnels is much slower than communication within a LAN and can cause significant delays in packet forwarding. If more than one path exists between two networks connected through a half-routing or tunneling port, you can minimize the amount of traffic on the half-routing or tunneling port by

- designating that port as a backup path
- increasing the routing distance through that port

If you do *not* designate the half-routing or tunneling port as a backup path, the router forwards packets over the path having the shortest routing distance. If the routing distances over redundant paths are the same, the router may alternately forward packets over each path. If you do not want the router to forward packets over a half-routing or tunneling port, you can increase the routing distance through that port, making it the path having the longest routing distance.

Designating a port as a backup path

To minimize traffic on a slow half-routing link or tunnel on which network-number remapping is *not* enabled, you can designate that port as a *backup path*. The router uses a backup path to forward AppleTalk data packets only if the primary path to a specific network becomes unavailable. Generally, the router uses a backup path *only* to exchange routing information. To designate a half-routing or tunneling port as a backup path, follow these steps:

- 1** In the Port Info dialog box for a half-routing or tunneling port, click Options.
The Options dialog box appears.
- 2** Select the “Use this port only as a backup path” checkbox to designate a port as a backup path.
To stop using a backup path, deselect the “Use this port only as a backup path” checkbox.

Options...

Network Hiding:

Hide only the networks listed from this port

Network List:

Remove

Network range starting with: Add

Network-Number Remapping:

☐ Remap remote network numbers into range: to:

☐ Cluster remapped networks ☐ Allow more than 15 hops

☒ Use this port only as a backup path

☐ Increase routing distance by: hops

Cancel OK

3 Click OK.

△ **Important** Once the router forwards data packets over a backup path, other routers may continue sending some packets over the backup path rather than sending them over the primary path when it again becomes available. To ensure that the routers use only the primary path, you may need to stop the router on which a port is configured as a backup path, wait ten minutes, then restart the router. △

Increasing the routing distance through a port

The Apple Internet Router provides *hop-count weighting* to reduce traffic on slow half-routing links or tunnels. Hop-count weighting effectively increases the routing distance through a port by a specific number of hops. You can assign a hop-count weight to a link between two exterior routers, based on the speed of the link. By increasing the routing distance through a port by a large number of hops, you can cause traffic to traverse a redundant path, if such a path is available and the distance to a network over that path appears to be shorter.

However, you should not increase the routing distance through a port by a number of hops that would cause routing distances to networks accessible through that port to exceed the maximum of 15 hops. Otherwise, the router would be unable to provide full connectivity to all of the networks on the internet unless a redundant path were available.

To increase the routing distance through a half-routing or tunneling port, follow these steps:

- 1** In the Port Info dialog box for a half-routing or tunneling port, click Options.
The Options dialog box appears.
- 2** Select the “Increase routing distance by” checkbox to turn on hop-count weighting.
Once you turn on hop-count weighting, you must specify the number of hops by which to increase the routing distance.
To turn off hop-count weighting, deselect the “Increase routing distance by” checkbox.
If you are turning hop-count weighting off, skip step 3.
- 3** Type the number of hops by which to increase the routing distance in the “Increase routing distance by” text box.

Options...

Network Hiding: Hide **only the networks listed** from this port

Network List:

Network range starting with: Add Remove

Network-Number Remapping:

☐ Remap remote network numbers into range: to: ☐ Cluster remapped networks ☐ Allow more than 15 hops

☐ Use this port only as a backup path

☒ Increase routing distance by: 2 hops

Cancel OK

- 4** Click OK.

Hiding networks in an internet

The Apple Internet Router provides basic network-level security for large WANs through *network hiding*.

When configuring a half-routing or tunneling port on the router, you can specify that certain networks or all networks connected to other ports on the router be hidden from or shown to other routers connected to that port. Devices on a part of the internet from which a network is hidden cannot access the devices on the hidden network. The names of devices on hidden networks do *not* appear in the Chooser on computers in the parts of an internet from which a network is hidden.

△ **Important** Devices on a hidden network cannot access devices on the parts of the internet from which the network is hidden, as shown in Figure 7-4. △

Half-router A hides Network 22 from Internet B.

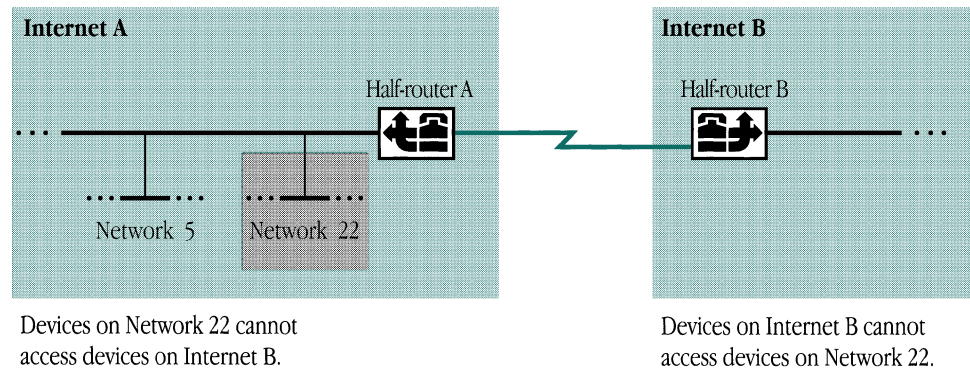


Figure 7-4 Network hiding

To hide or show a network connected to a half-routing or tunneling port, follow these steps:

- 1 In the Port Info dialog box for a half-routing or tunneling port, click Options.
The Options dialog box appears.
- 2 Select an option in the Hide pop-up menu to specify whether networks are to be hidden and how to list the networks.

Hide	no networks
	✓ only the networks listed
	all networks except those listed

In the Hide pop-up menu, “only the networks listed” is selected by default. If you select “all networks except those listed,” only the zones and devices associated with the networks that you add to the network list will appear in the Chooser.

If you selected “no networks,” skip steps 3 through 5.

- 3 To specify the network number or range of a network to be hidden or shown, type the network number or the first network number in the range in the “Network range starting with” text box.

- 4 Click Add.

The network number appears in the list of network numbers.

Options...

Network Hiding:

Hide **only the networks listed** from this port

Network List:

2001	Remove

Network range starting with: 2001 Add

Network-Number Remapping:

☐ Remap remote network numbers into range: to:

☐ Cluster remapped networks ☐ Allow more than 15 hops

☐ Use this port only as a backup path

☐ Increase routing distance by: hops

Cancel OK

- 5 To hide or show additional networks, repeat steps 3 and 4 for each network.

- 6 Click OK.

8 Modifying the Router's Setup

Using Router Manager, you can activate and deactivate ports at any time. However, to modify a setup document or change the router's startup options, you must first stop the router. You can start, stop, or reconfigure the router without restarting the router Macintosh.

This chapter explains how to

- change the router's zone
- enter an administrator's password to open Router Manager
- activate and deactivate ports
- stop the router
- modify setup documents and port configurations
- designate a different setup document as the startup document and change the router's other startup options
- customize views of setup windows
- change the administrator's password
- remove password protection from Router Manager

Changing the router's zone

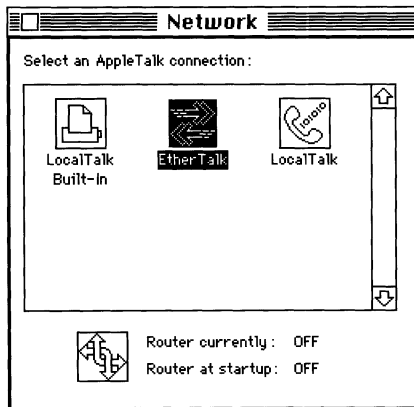
If you designated an AppleTalk connection other than LocalTalk as the user port for the router Macintosh, you can change the zone in which the router Macintosh resides at any time. To change its zone, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose Control Panels from the Apple menu.

The Control Panels window appears.

- 2 In the Control Panels window, double-click the Network icon to open the Network control panel.

The Network control panel appears.



- 3 In the Network control panel, click the AppleTalk connection that is currently highlighted.

A message asks you to select an AppleTalk zone.

- 4 Select a zone from the list of available AppleTalk zones, then click OK.

The router Macintosh remains in this zone until you change the router's AppleTalk connection or select a different zone for the router.

- 5 Close the Network control panel.

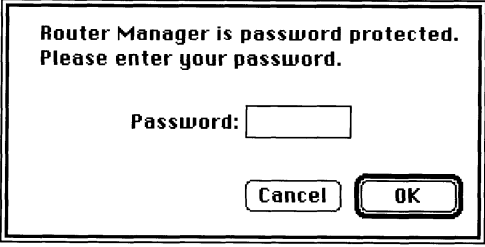
Entering your password to open Router Manager

Once you have set an administrator's password, you must thereafter enter your password to open Router Manager to change a setup document, the status of either a port or the router, or the router's startup options. To enter the administrator's password when opening Router Manager, follow these steps:

1 Double-click the Router Manager icon.

Alternatively, if the router is *not* running, you can double-click a setup document's icon to open Router Manager.

The following dialog box appears.



A dialog box with a double border. The text inside reads: "Router Manager is password protected. Please enter your password." Below this text is a label "Password:" followed by a single-line text input field. At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: "Cancel" and "OK".

2 Type the administrator's password in the Password text box.

You must type your password *exactly* as you did when setting your password, including your use of uppercase and lowercase letters.

3 Click OK.

Router Manager opens. If the router is not running and you opened Router Manager by double-clicking a setup document's icon, that setup document also opens.

Activating and deactivating ports

When the router is running, it routes data packets through all active ports. You can change the status of a port—to active or inactive—either when the router is running *or* when the router is off. When you first configure a port, its status is active by default. To change the status of a port, follow these steps:

- 1 Open a setup document.
- 2 In the setup window, double-click an access method to open a Port Info dialog box.
- 3 In the Port Info dialog box, change the port's status.
 - To activate a port that is currently inactive, click the Active button.
 - To deactivate a port that is currently active, click the Inactive button.

△ **Important** You can deactivate the user port when the router is running. However, deactivating the user port interrupts users' access to any network services running concurrently on the router Macintosh. Users cannot access those services until you reactivate the user port. △

- 4 Click Define to close the Port Info dialog box.

If the router is running, the change that you made to the port status is effective only until you next stop the router. If you want to change the port status temporarily, you are done.

If the router is *not* currently running, you can change the port status permanently, as described in step 5.

- 5 If the router is not running, choose Save from the File menu to save your changes to the setup document, permanently changing the port's status.

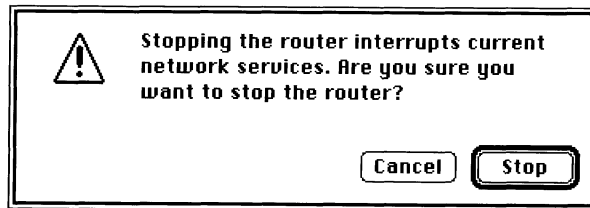
Stopping the router

You cannot modify setup documents when the router is running. To modify a setup document, you must first stop the router. To stop the router, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose Stop Router from the Control menu.



The following alert box appears.



- 2 Click Stop to confirm that you want to stop the router.

When the router stops running, the Stop Router command changes to Start Router. The router status indicator in the Network control panel indicates that the router is currently off.

Once you stop the router, you can modify the startup document or any other setup document, create a new setup document, or designate a different setup document as the startup document.

Modifying a setup document

You can modify an existing setup document once you stop the router. To open a setup document, choose Open from the File menu. The setup document appears on the desktop.

Adding or changing a port configuration

When the router is not running, you can add port configurations to a setup document or change a port configuration in a setup document. To configure another port or change a port configuration, follow these steps:

- 1** In a setup window, double-click an access method to open a Port Info dialog box.
- 2** In the Port Info dialog box, configure the port or change the existing port information.
For instructions on how to configure the port or change the existing port information, see the following sections:
 - To configure a LocalTalk port, see the sections “Configuring a LocalTalk Port” and “Hiding Devices on an Internet” in Chapter 4 of this guide.
 - To configure an EtherTalk or TokenTalk port, see the sections “Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port” and “Hiding Devices on an Internet” in Chapter 4 of this guide.
 - To configure a half-routing port, see “Configuring a Half-Routing Port” in Chapter 5 of this guide; and “Configuring the Wide Area Routing Options” in Chapter 7 of this guide.
 - To configure an IP tunneling port, see *Using the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension* and “Configuring the Wide Area Routing Options” in Chapter 7 of this guide.
 - To configure an X.25 port, see *Using the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension* and “Configuring the Wide Area Routing Options” in Chapter 7 of this guide.
- 3** Click Define to close the Port Info dialog box.
- 4** Save your changes to the setup document.

Changing a network number or range

Once you assign a network number or range to an AppleTalk network and run the router, you should avoid changing that network number or range, if possible. The network number or range that you specify for an AppleTalk network appears in the routing tables in all routers on the internet.

- △ **Important** Changing a network's number or range can cause errors in internet routing to and from devices on that network. When you start up a device, it acquires its network number or network range from the router. If you change a network's number or range, you *must* restart all devices on that network to enable them to acquire the new number or range. Otherwise, the devices on that network will not have the correct network number or range. △

To change a network number or range, follow these steps:

- 1 **Stop all routers connected directly to the network for which you are changing the network number or range to avoid conflicts.**

While the routers connected directly to the network for which you are changing the network number or range are stopped, the devices on that network cannot access services on other networks, nor can other devices on the internet access services on that network.

- 2 **In the Port Info dialog box, change the network number or range.**

For instructions on how to specify a different network number, see the section “Configuring a LocalTalk Port” in Chapter 4. For instructions on how to specify a different network range, see the section “Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port” in Chapter 4.

- 3 **Click Define to close the Port Info dialog box.**

- 4 **Save your changes to the setup document.**

- 5 Repeat steps 2 through 4 for all seed routers connected directly to the network for which you are changing the network number or range.
- △ **Important** If more than one router is a seed router for a network, you must specify *exactly* the same network number or range when configuring the seed port on each seed router connected to that network. △
- 6 After the routers have been off for at least ten minutes, restart the routers.

The delay purges the network's old network number or range from the routing tables in all routers on the internet, allowing the routers to acquire the network's new network number or range when you restart them.

Changing a zone name or zone list

The zone name or zone list that you specify for an AppleTalk network appears in the routing tables in all routers on the internet and in the Chooser on each Macintosh on the internet. You should notify network users of any changes made to zone names or zone lists. To change a zone name or zone list, follow these steps:

- 1 Stop all routers connected directly to the network for which you are changing the zone name or zone list to avoid conflicts.

While the routers connected directly to the network for which you are changing the zone name or zone list are stopped, the devices on that network cannot access services on other networks, nor can other devices on the internet access services on that network.
- 2 In the Port Info dialog box, change the network's zone name or zone list.

For instructions on how to change a zone name, see the section "Configuring a LocalTalk Port" in Chapter 4. For instructions on how to change a zone list, see the section "Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port" in Chapter 4.
- △ **Important** Before merging two existing zones—by giving one zone the same name as another zone—verify that all network services of the same type within the two zones have different names. △

- 3 Click Define to close the Port Info dialog box.
 - 4 Save your changes to the setup document.
 - 5 Repeat steps 2 through 4 for all seed routers connected directly to the network for which you are changing the zone name or zone list.
- △ **Important** If more than one router is a seed router for a network, you must specify *exactly* the same zone name or zone list when configuring the seed port on each seed router connected to that network. You can add zone names to a zone list in any order. The default zone for a network must be the same on all seed routers connected to the network. △
- 6 After the routers have been off for at least ten minutes, restart the routers.

The delay purges the network's old zone name or zone list from the routing tables in all routers on the internet, allowing the routers to acquire the network's new zone name or zone list when you restart them.

Removing a device from a list of hidden devices

When reconfiguring an AppleTalk port, you can remove a device from a list of hidden devices by following these steps:

- 1 In the Hide Devices dialog box, select the item to be removed from the device list.
- 2 Click Remove.

The item no longer appears in the device list.
- 3 Click OK.
- 4 Save your changes to the setup document.

Removing a network from a list of hidden networks

When reconfiguring a half-routing or tunneling port, you can remove a network number from a list of hidden networks by following these steps:

- 1 In the Options dialog box, select the network number to be removed from the network list.
- 2 Click Remove.
The network number no longer appears in the list of network numbers.
- 3 Click OK.
- 4 Save your changes to the setup document.

Removing a port configuration

When the router is not running, you can remove an existing port configuration. To remove a port configuration, follow these steps:

- 1 In a setup window, select an access method.
- 2 Choose Clear Port Info from the Edit menu.
Any information previously specified in the Port Info dialog box for the selected access method is cleared.
- 3 Save your changes to the setup document.

Using a different startup document

Router Manager allows you to create multiple setup documents. When the router is not running, you can select a different setup document for the router to use at startup. To select a different startup document, follow the instructions in the section “Selecting a Startup Document” in Chapter 3.

Changing other router-startup options

When the router is not running, you can change any of the settings in the Set Startup dialog box. You can turn the options “Activate router at Macintosh startup” and “Cancel router startup if an error occurs” on or off. You can also specify the maximum sizes of routing tables and zone tables. For instructions on how to set these options, see the section “Configuring the Router for Startup” in Chapter 3.

Customizing your view of a setup window

Router Manager allows you to control the display of information in a setup window. Once you choose a view, Router Manager uses that view until you choose a different view.

Displaying a detailed or summary view

You can choose a detailed or summary view of a setup window. By default, Router Manager displays a detailed view of a setup window. In the View menu, a checkmark indicates the view that is currently selected.

View	
✓ Detailed	
Summary	
✓ Decimal	⌘D
Hexadecimal	⌘H
Ascending	⌘I
Descending	⌘J
Bar Graph	
Line Graph	

Figure 8-1 The View menu

To see a detailed view of a setup window, choose Detailed from the View menu. A detailed view of a setup window provides the following information:

- all of the router's physical ports
- all access methods available for each physical port
- a port description, the current status, and the current settings for each port

To see a summary view of a setup window, choose Summary from the View menu. A summary view of a setup window lists only the physical ports and access methods that have been configured.

Setting the numeric display format

You can choose a decimal or hexadecimal numeric display format for the network numbers and ranges displayed in a setup window. By default, Router Manager displays network numbers and ranges in decimal numbers. In the View menu, a checkmark indicates the view that is currently selected.

To display network numbers and ranges in decimal numbers, choose Decimal from the View menu. To display network numbers and ranges in hexadecimal numbers, choose Hexadecimal from the View menu.

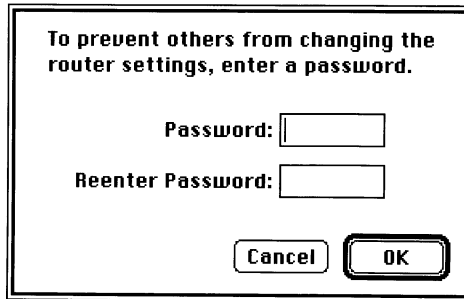
You can specify network numbers and network ranges as either decimal or hexadecimal numbers, regardless of the current numeric display format. Router Manager converts all numbers to the current format. In Router Manager, a \$ character must precede hexadecimal numbers.

Changing the administrator's password

To change the administrator's password, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose Set Password from the Control menu.

The following dialog box appears.



To prevent others from changing the router settings, enter a password.

Password:

Reenter Password:

- 2 Type your new password in the Password text box.

You can use a maximum of eight characters in your password, and can use uppercase and lowercase letters to distinguish passwords. The characters that you type appear as bullets to prevent others from learning your password.

- 3 Press Tab to move to the Reenter Password text box, then type your new password again in the Reenter Password text box, exactly as you did the first time.

You must type your password *exactly* as you did before, including your use of uppercase and lowercase letters. Typing your password again confirms that you have entered it correctly.

- 4 Click OK to change your password.

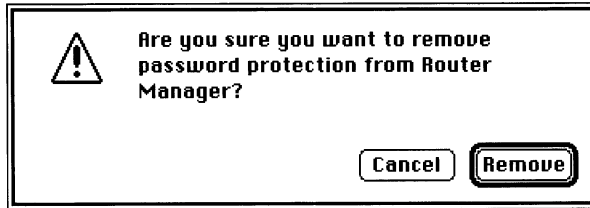
You must enter your password whenever you subsequently open Router Manager. You must type your password *exactly* as you did when setting your password, including your use of uppercase and lowercase letters.

Removing password protection

To remove password protection from Router Manager, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose **Remove Password** from the **Control** menu.

The following alert box appears.



- 2 Click **Remove** to verify that you want to remove password protection.

You no longer have to enter an administrator's password to open Router Manager.

9 Monitoring the Router

Router Manager allows you to monitor the operation of the Apple Internet Router. The Apple Internet Router also supports the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), which allows a network administrator working at a remote computer to obtain statistical and other information from the router.

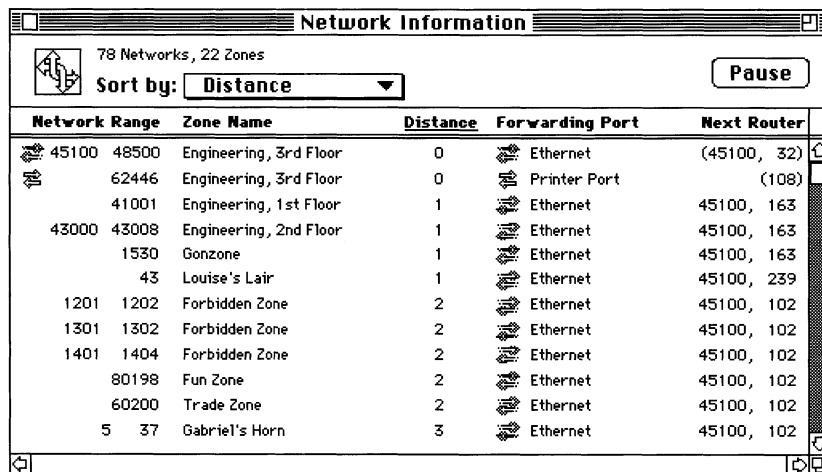
This chapter explains how to use Router Manager to monitor network routing information, router statistics, and port statistics—including routing activity, network reliability, and network errors—when the router is running.

When monitoring router operation, you can open multiple windows concurrently—including the setup window for the startup document, the Network Information window, the Router Statistics window, the Port Statistics window, and the Router Log.

Monitoring network routing information

The Network Information window displays a routing table, which contains the current routing information for the entire internet. As described in the sections that follow, you can display a detailed or summary view of the routing information, display network numbers and ranges as either hexadecimal or decimal numbers, sort the routing information, and temporarily prevent the display from being updated. Once you choose a view of the routing information, Router Manager uses that view until you choose a different view.

When the router is running, choose Network Information from the Windows menu to display the current routing information for the network. The Network Information window appears.



Network Range	Zone Name	Distance	Forwarding Port	Next Router
45100 48500	Engineering, 3rd Floor	0	Ethernet	(45100, 32)
62446	Engineering, 3rd Floor	0	Printer Port	(108)
41001	Engineering, 1st Floor	1	Ethernet	45100, 163
43000 43008	Engineering, 2nd Floor	1	Ethernet	45100, 163
1530	Gonzzone	1	Ethernet	45100, 163
43	Louise's Lair	1	Ethernet	45100, 239
1201 1202	Forbidden Zone	2	Ethernet	45100, 102
1301 1302	Forbidden Zone	2	Ethernet	45100, 102
1401 1404	Forbidden Zone	2	Ethernet	45100, 102
80198	Fun Zone	2	Ethernet	45100, 102
60200	Trade Zone	2	Ethernet	45100, 102
5 37	Gabriel's Horn	3	Ethernet	45100, 102

Figure 9-1 The Network Information window

The Network Information window displays the current numbers of networks in and zones on the internet.

The routing table

The router maintains an internal *routing table*, consisting of entries that represent the shortest path to each destination network on an internet. Whenever the router receives routing information from other routers on the internet, it updates its routing table to reflect any changes to the internet—such as networks added to or removed from the internet.

◆ **Note** If the router is not a seed router for a network, it can display that network's routing information in the Network Information window only after it obtains that information from a seed router on that network. Thus, once the routers on a network exchange their routing tables and the router receives the routing information for a network that is connected to a nonseed port from a seed router for that network, the router can send packets to that network.

The router displays network ranges and zone lists for networks that are connected to half-routing and tunneling ports after it remaps and clusters the network numbers. ◆

The routing table displayed in the Network Information window lists the current routing information for each destination network and zone on the internet. Each entry includes the following information about a destination network:

- *Network Range* The network number or range of network numbers assigned to a destination network. If a network is connected directly to the router, an icon at the left of the network range indicates the access method for the port to which the network is connected.
- *Zone Name* The zone name for a destination network.
- *Distance* The routing distance in hops from the router to a destination network. Networks that are connected directly to a router have a routing distance of zero hops.
- *Forwarding Port* The port description for a port through which the router forwards packets to a destination network. An icon at the left of the forwarding port indicates the access method for the forwarding port. Figure 9-2 shows how the router uses a forwarding port to forward packets to the next router for a destination network.
- *Next Router* The node address of the next router in the path to a destination network to which the router is forwarding packets. The next router is on the network connected to the forwarding port.

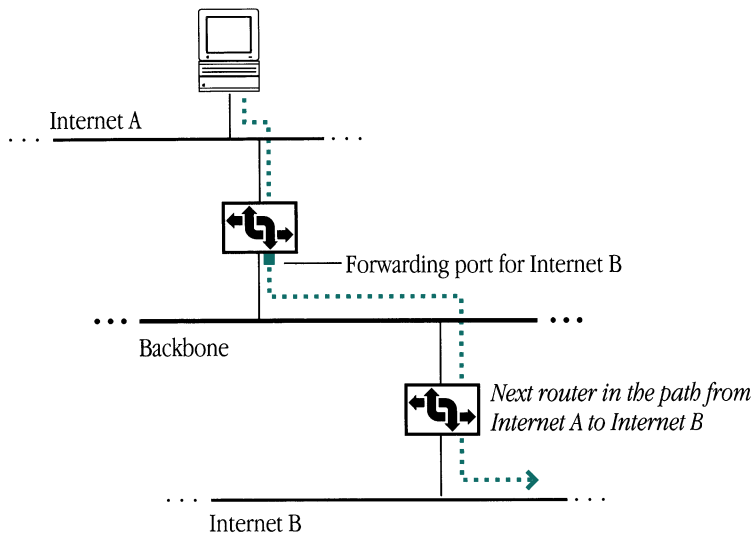


Figure 9-2 A forwarding port

The forwarding port to which the next router is connected determines the type of node address displayed.

- If the forwarding port is a LocalTalk port, the node address of the next router is its node ID. If the next router is that on which Router Manager is running, the node address listed for the next router is that of the forwarding router itself and appears in parentheses.
- If the forwarding port is an EtherTalk or TokenTalk port, the address of the next router consists of its network number and node ID. If the next router is that on which Router Manager is running, the node address listed for the next router is that of the forwarding router itself and appears in parentheses.
- If the forwarding port is a half-routing port, the next router is represented as the phone number to which the port is connecting, if that number is known.
- If the forwarding port is a tunneling port, the next router is represented as an address in the foreign network system on which the tunnel is built, rather than as an AppleTalk address. For more information about IP tunneling ports, see *Using the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension*.

Using the information in the routing table, the router can determine the most efficient path over which to forward a data packet to its destination network.

Displaying a detailed or summary view

You can display either a detailed or summary view of the current routing information in the Network Information window. By default, Router Manager displays a detailed view of the routing information. In the View menu, a checkmark indicates the view that is currently selected.

To see a detailed view of the routing information, choose Detailed from the View menu. A detailed view provides the following routing information for each zone in each network on an internet:

- the network's number or range
- the zone's name
- the distance to the network in hops
- the network's forwarding port
- the next router in the path to the network

To see a summary view of the routing information, choose Summary from the View menu. A summary view of the routing information includes only one entry for each network on an internet. Only the first zone name in each network's alphabetical zone list appears in the summary view. When a network has more than one zone, an ellipsis (...) follows that zone name, indicating that other zones are present.

Setting the numeric display format

You can choose a decimal or hexadecimal numeric display format for network numbers and ranges displayed in the Network Information window. By default, Router Manager displays network numbers and ranges in the routing table in decimal numbers. In the View menu, a checkmark indicates the view that is currently selected.

To display network numbers and ranges in decimal numbers, choose Decimal from the View menu. To display network numbers and ranges in hexadecimal numbers, choose Hexadecimal from the View menu.

You can specify network numbers and network ranges as either decimal or hexadecimal numbers, regardless of the current numeric display format. Router Manager converts all numbers to the current numeric display format. In Router Manager, a \$ character must precede hexadecimal numbers.

Sorting the routing table

You can select a sort key and a sort direction by which to sort the routing table in the Network Information window.

Selecting a sort key In the Network Information window, you can sort the entries in the routing table by network range, zone name, distance, or forwarding port. By default, the entries are sorted by distance. To sort the routing table using a different sort key, select the type of information by which the routing table is to be sorted in the “Sort by” pop-up menu. A checkmark indicates the type of information by which the routing table is currently sorted.

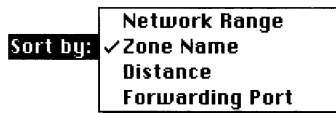
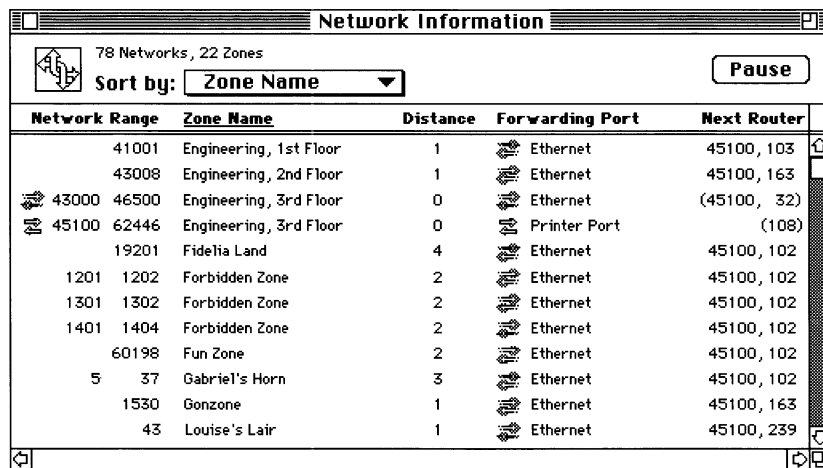


Figure 9-3 The “Sort by” pop-up menu

The heading of the column containing the type of information by which the routing table is currently sorted is underlined. Figure 9-4 shows the routing table in the Network Information window sorted by zone name.



Network Range	<u>Zone Name</u>	Distance	Forwarding Port	Next Router
41001	Engineering, 1st Floor	1	Ethernet	45100, 103
43008	Engineering, 2nd Floor	1	Ethernet	45100, 163
43000 46500	Engineering, 3rd Floor	0	Ethernet	(45100, 32)
45100 62446	Engineering, 3rd Floor	0	Printer Port	(108)
19201	Fidelia Land	4	Ethernet	45100, 102
1201 1202	Forbidden Zone	2	Ethernet	45100, 102
1301 1302	Forbidden Zone	2	Ethernet	45100, 102
1401 1404	Forbidden Zone	2	Ethernet	45100, 102
60198	Fun Zone	2	Ethernet	45100, 102
5 37	Gabriel's Horn	3	Ethernet	45100, 102
1530	Gonzone	1	Ethernet	45100, 163
43	Louise's Lair	1	Ethernet	45100, 239

Figure 9-4 The routing table sorted by zone name

◆ **Note** Alternatively, you can change the sort key by clicking the heading for the column that contains the type of information by which you want to sort the routing table. ◆

Selecting the sort direction The Network Information window displays the routing information sorted in ascending order by default—that is, from A to Z or from the lowest to the highest number. To sort the routing information in ascending order, choose Ascending from the View menu. If you want to sort the routing information in descending order, choose Descending from the View menu. A checkmark indicates the view that is currently selected.

View	
✓ Detailed Summary	
✓ Decimal	⌘D
Hexadecimal	⌘H
✓ Ascending	⌘[
Descending	⌘]
Bar Graph	
Line Graph	

Figure 9-5 The View menu

Freezing the display

To prevent the display of the routing table temporarily from being updated, click Pause. The Pause button changes to Resume. To update the routing table click Resume.

Monitoring network activity and reliability over time

The Router Statistics window displays information about router activity levels, network reliability, and network error rates. It also allows you to control the graphing of that information. You can display router statistics as either bar graphs or line graphs. To open the Router Statistics window, choose Router Statistics from the Windows menu.

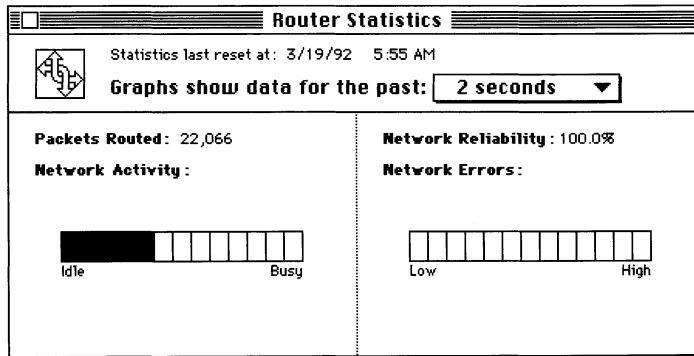


Figure 9-6 The Router Statistics window with bar graphs

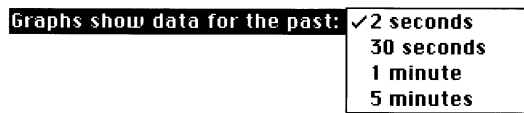
The Router Statistics window allows you to monitor the following information:

- *Statistics last reset at* The time and date when the router statistics were last reset or the router was last restarted.
- *Packets Routed* The total number of packets received and forwarded by the router since the router statistics were last reset or the router was last restarted. This total includes only AppleTalk packets passing through the router—not packets generated by nonrouting services on the user port or packets generated by software using AppleTalk routing protocols.
- *Network Activity* The current level of network activity, or traffic, through the router, averaged over the selected period and displayed on a scale of from 0 to 200 packets per second.
- *Network Reliability* The percentage of packets routed successfully, without error.
- *Network Errors* The current level of network errors, which is the proportion of router traffic on which errors occur, averaged over the selected period and displayed on a scale of from 0 to 10 percent.

Displaying network activity and error statistics as bar graphs

To display network activity and error statistics as bar graphs, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose Bar Graph from the View menu.
A checkmark indicates the view currently selected.
- 2 To specify the period of time represented in the graphs, select a time period in the “Graphs show data for the past” pop-up menu in the Router Statistics window.



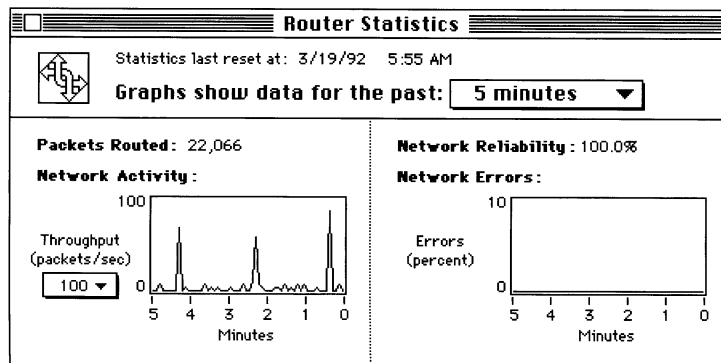
A checkmark indicates the time period currently selected.

Displaying network activity and error statistics as line graphs

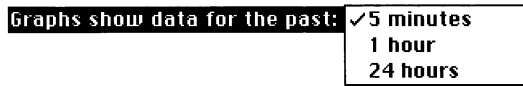
To display network activity and error statistics as line graphs, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose Line Graph from the View menu.

The Router Statistics window appears as shown in the following figure.

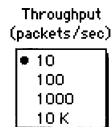


- 2 To specify the period of time represented in the graphs, select a time period in the “Graphs show data for the past” pop-up menu in the Router Statistics window.



A checkmark indicates the time period currently selected.

- 3 To specify the maximum number of packets per second represented in the Network Activity graph, select a number of packets per second in the Throughput pop-up menu.



A bullet indicates the number of packets per second currently selected.

Monitoring port statistics

The Port Statistics window displays statistics for the ports configured on the router—including various types of operations and errors on the internet. When the router is running, you can choose Port Statistics from the Windows menu to open the Port Statistics window, shown in Figure 9-7.

In addition to listing the statistics for each port configured on the router, the Port Statistics window lists totals for all ports on the router. The values of the port statistics increase from the time that you start the router until you reset the router statistics or stop the router. Statistics for ports that are currently inactive appear in italics. The Port Statistics window also displays the time and date at which the statistics were last reset or the router was last restarted.

Port Statistics			
Statistics last reset at: 3/19/92 5:55 AM			
Statistics	Total	Ethernet	Printer Port
Packets In	13036	8908	4128
Packets Out	13036	8908	4128
Name Requests In	968	648	320
Name LookUps Out	21302	16367	4935
Data Link Errors	0	0	0
Packet Buffer Overflow	0	0	0
Unknown Network	0	0	0
Hop Count Exceeded	0	0	0
Routing Table Overflow	0	0	0
Local Net Setup Conflicts	0	0	0
Remote Net Range Conflicts	0	0	0
Router Version Mismatch	0	0	0

Figure 9-7 The Port Statistics window

Monitoring incoming and outgoing traffic

In the Port Statistics window, you can monitor incoming and outgoing traffic on each port or on the router as:

- *Packets In* The total number of packets received for forwarding by the router since the statistics were last reset or the router was last restarted, indicating the amount of incoming traffic on a port or on the router.
 - *Packets Out* The total number of packets forwarded by the router since the statistics were last reset or the router was last restarted, indicating the amount of outgoing traffic on a port or on the router.
- ◆ **Note** The totals for Packets In and Packets Out include only AppleTalk packets, *not* packets generated by nonrouting services on the user port or packets generated by software using AppleTalk routing protocols. ◆
- *Name Requests In* The total number of requests for device names generated by end nodes and received through a port or by the router. Name Requests allow end nodes to acquire device names for device lists in the Chooser or in other networking application programs.

- *Name LookUps Out* The total number of name lookups generated by a port or by the router, in response to incoming name requests. When the router receives a Name Request, it generates a Name Lookup for each network having a zone list that contains the zone named in the request.

Monitoring network errors

In the Port Statistics window, you can monitor the following types of network errors on each port or on the router:

- *Data Link Errors* The number of hardware errors encountered on receiving and forwarding packets.
- *Packet Buffer Overflow* The number of packets discarded by the router because the rate at which it received packets exceeded the rate at which it could forward the packets and its packet buffer became full.
- *Unknown Network* The number of packets discarded by the router because it received requests to route packets to networks not listed in its routing table and was unable to forward the packets.
- *Hop Count Exceeded* The number of packets not forwarded by the router because the paths to their destination networks exceeded the maximum routing distance of 15 hops.
- *Routing Table Overflow* The number of routing packets discarded by the router because the number of AppleTalk networks on the internet exceeded the router's current maximum number of routing table entries and the router was unable to add the packets' destination networks to the routing table.
- *Local Net Setup Conflicts* The number of routing packets received by the router that have a different network number or range for the network over which they were sent than that specified in the current setup for the router being monitored. Such setup errors occur when a network is connected directly to two routers and the configurations for the ports to which that network is connected contain conflicting network numbers or ranges.
- *Remote Net Range Conflicts* The number of routing packets received by the router that indicate a routing table maintained by another router contains a network range that conflicts with a network range listed in the routing table in the router being monitored.
- *Router Version Mismatch* The number of routing packets received from another router on the internet that does not support AppleTalk Phase 2.

Resetting router and port statistics

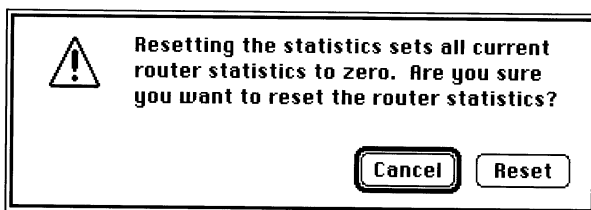
You can reset the statistics that appear in the Router Statistics and Port Statistics windows, including:

- the number of packets routed displayed in the Router Statistics window, which indicates the level of router activity
- the numbers of incoming and outgoing packets displayed in the Port Statistics window, which indicate the amount of traffic over the router
- the numbers of various types of possible network errors displayed in the Port Statistics window
- the time and date when the statistics were last reset displayed in the Router Statistics and Port Statistics windows

The number of packets routed and the other port statistics increase from the time at which you start the router until you reset the statistics or stop the router. To reset the router and port statistics, follow these steps:

1 Choose Reset Statistics from the Control menu.

The following alert box appears.



2 Click Reset.

Router Manager resets the number of packets routed and the values of the other port statistics to zero, then again begins increasing their values. It also changes the time and date when the statistics were last reset or the router was last restarted—which is displayed in the Router Statistics and Port Statistics windows—to the current time and date. Resetting the statistics does not affect the graphs in the Router Statistics window.

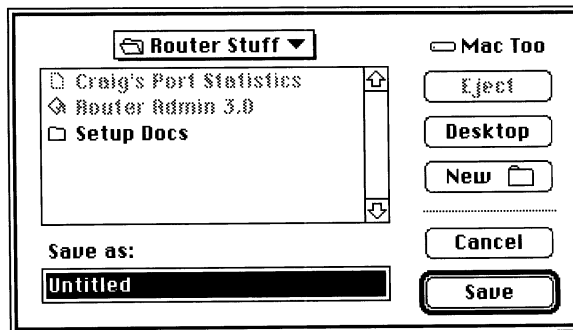
Exporting information

You can save the information in the Network Information and Port Statistics windows as tab-delimited text in a document that various types of application programs can read, including spreadsheet and word-processing programs.

To export the network routing information in the Network Information window or the statistics in the Port Statistics window, follow these steps:

- 1 Choose **Network Information** or **Port Statistics** from the **Windows** menu to open the corresponding window.
- 2 Choose **Export Data** from the **File** menu to save the information in a text document that has a tab-delimited format.

The following dialog box appears.



- 3 Name and save the document.
Router Manager saves the text in a tab-delimited format.

Printing

You can print the information displayed in any of the following windows:

- a setup window—including the port information defined in the Port Info dialog box for each port
- the Network Information window
- the Port Statistics window
- the Router Log

10 Troubleshooting

While using Router Manager to set up the router or during router operation, you may encounter problems that require troubleshooting. This chapter gives an overview of the troubleshooting process, which provides an effective strategy for defining, isolating, and solving problems. This chapter also describes how to recognize and solve some problems that you might have with your network, the internet, or the router; and how you can use the Router Log to help you to identify problems.

If you specify invalid or conflicting information when setting up the router, a message informs you about the error and describes how to correct it. Messages also alert you to problems encountered during router operation, whenever possible. This chapter provides additional information about some of the messages that may appear in Router Manager—for example, messages that may require further action to solve a problem or for which there are alternative solutions.

Diagnosing and solving problems

The following steps represent a troubleshooting strategy that can help you to define, isolate, and solve problems with a network, the internet, or the router.

1 Determine the symptoms of the problem.

Gather information from users to define the nature of the problem. If users report more than one problem, define and troubleshoot each problem separately.

2 Ascertain whether the network is the source of the problem.

The network is not the source of the problem if one or more of these conditions exist:

- After disconnecting the network from the device, you can still reproduce the problem on that device.
- A hardware device has failed.
- A user is experiencing the problem only within one application program.
- The problem resulted because a procedure was performed incorrectly by the user.

The network is the source of the problem if one or more of these conditions exist:

- Users cannot access a network service.
- Access to a network service is intermittent.
- One or more devices cannot communicate with other devices.
- Network performance is degraded.

For additional information that can help you to determine whether there is a problem with the network, see the section “Network Problems” later in this chapter.

3 Identify the location of the problem and determine its scope.

Systematically examine progressively smaller components of the network to isolate the problem.

- First, identify what network or networks in the internet are affected by the problem.
- If the problem affects more than one network, determine whether the networks are connected.

- If the problem is isolated to one network, ascertain whether the problem affects more than one device.
- Determine whether there is an excessive amount of traffic between or within specific networks.
- Verify that the network topology is correct.
- Determine whether a network exceeds the maximum cable length or number of devices.
- Determine whether the Macintosh computer on which the router is running or another hardware device is causing the problem.
- Determine whether the router software or other software running on a specific device is causing the problem.

You must determine whether a problem is caused by the network or the router. For additional information that can help you to determine whether the internet or the router is the source of the problem, see the sections “Internet Problems,” “Problems With Wide Area Internets,” and “Problems With the Apple Internet Router” later in this chapter.

4 Identify the cause of the problem.

Once you’ve isolated the problem to the router or another specific device:

- Verify that its connecting cables are undamaged and connected properly.
- Ascertain whether the router Macintosh or another device is malfunctioning.
- If the hardware is functioning properly, determine whether there is a software problem. If the router is the source of the problem, verify that the router software was installed and set up properly.

For information about various conditions that can cause specific problems with the internet or the router, see the sections “Internet Problems,” “Problems With Wide Area Internets,” and “Problems With the Apple Internet Router” later in this chapter.

5 Verify and correct any problem with the network, the router Macintosh or other device, or software running on a device.

Check the Router Log to verify possible problems with the router. For information about the Router Log, see the section “Using the Router Log to Obtain Information About Router Operation” later in this chapter.

For information about solutions to problems with the internet or the router, see the sections “Internet Problems,” “Problems With Wide Area Internets,” and “Problems With the Apple Internet Router” later in this chapter.

Network problems

This section describes the symptoms and causes for network problems that can affect the operation of a router.

Missing devices

These symptoms may occur if a device is missing on a network:

- Users are unable to access another zone, another network, a file server, a printer, or the local network.
- Users cannot send electronic mail.
- A device list changes intermittently.

A device may be missing for one of the following reasons:

- The device is not on.
- The device is malfunctioning.
- A break exists in a network connection due to:
 - a defective network interface card
 - a network interface card not seated firmly in its expansion slot
 - a cable disconnected from a connector box
 - a disconnected cable extender
 - a broken cable
 - broken or damaged connector pins
- An inappropriate type of media—such as video or phone cabling—connects devices on the network.

Intermittent access to network services and devices

A device appears intermittently in a device list in the Chooser or another application program.

The number of cyclic redundancy check (CRC) errors that occur is excessive.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
A network connector is loose.	Reconnect the connector.
A cable extender is loose.	Reconnect the extender to the cable.
A cable is damaged or crimped.	Replace the cable.
The network does not have the proper topology.	Lay out the network properly.
The network is not terminated properly.	Terminate the network as required by the cable type.
The network's cable length exceeds the maximum.	Install a repeater. Subdivide the network with a bridge or router.
The number of devices on the network exceeds the maximum.	Subdivide the network with a bridge or router.
Electromagnetic interference exists.	Reroute twisted-pair or coaxial cable. Replace the cable with fiber-optic cable. Replace the cable with shielded cable.

Degradation of network performance

Users experience delays in network services.

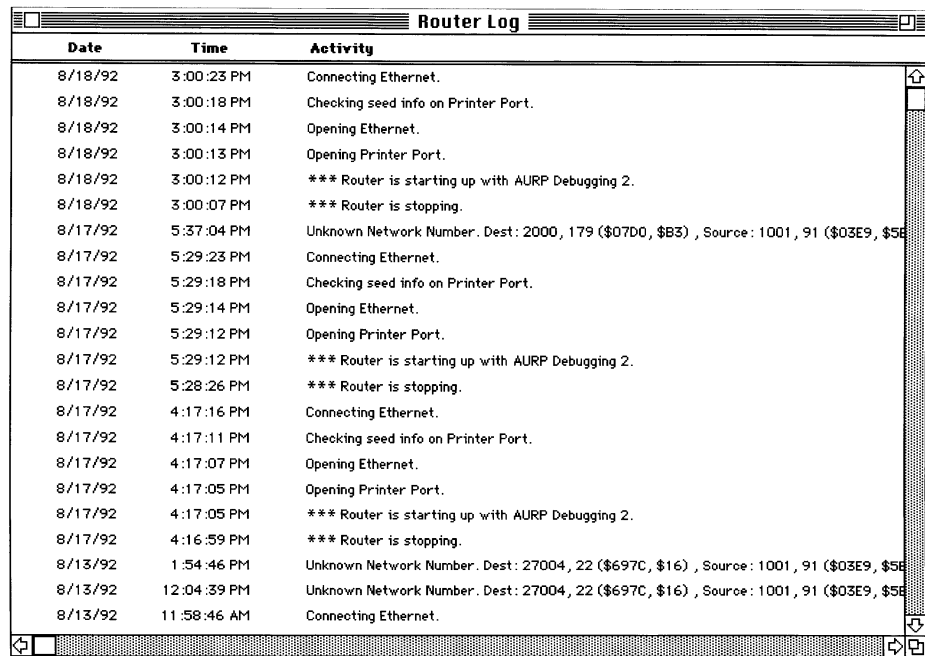
<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
An excessive amount of traffic exists on the network.	Ask users to access devices that aren't busy. Subdivide the network with a bridge or router. Add a backbone network. Use a network system that has a faster data transmission rate.
The number of shared services on the network is insufficient—for example, printers or file servers.	Add shared services as needed. Add a print server.
The number of devices on the network exceeds the maximum.	Subdivide the network with a bridge or router.
System software conflicts exist between devices on the network.	Install the same version of the system software on all devices on the network.
Incompatible device drivers—for example, LaserWriter drivers—are installed on devices on the network.	Install the same versions of the device drivers on all devices on the network.
Users are using network services inappropriately.	Ask users to copy application programs from file servers to their own hard disks before opening the programs.
Too many network services are running on a server.	Move one or more services to another server.
Excessive routing distances exist between networks.	Change the placement of routers in the network to reduce the number of hops between a server and devices on other networks that frequently access its services. Add a backbone network.
A virus has infected devices on the network.	Use a virus-protection program to detect and eradicate any viruses.

Using the Router Log to obtain information about router operation

The router records information about its operation in the Router Log, which indicates the router's current status and any errors that prevent the router from running. When the router starts, it records the status of its ports in the Router Log, indicating any errors that prevent a port from being activated. When the router is running, the Router Log provides additional information about errors indicated in the Port Statistics window.

◆ **Note** To prevent the Router Log from being filled with repeated occurrences of the same error, the router does not list all occurrences of a type of error. The router logs an error only when it has not recently encountered an error of the same type—that is, within the last 15 minutes to 1 hour. ◆

To display the Router Log in Router Manager, choose Router Log from the Windows menu. Figure 10-1 shows a Router Log. The most recent entries appear at the top.



Router Log		
Date	Time	Activity
8/18/92	3:00:23 PM	Connecting Ethernet.
8/18/92	3:00:18 PM	Checking seed info on Printer Port.
8/18/92	3:00:14 PM	Opening Ethernet.
8/18/92	3:00:13 PM	Opening Printer Port.
8/18/92	3:00:12 PM	*** Router is starting up with AURP Debugging 2.
8/18/92	3:00:07 PM	*** Router is stopping.
8/17/92	5:37:04 PM	Unknown Network Number. Dest: 2000, 179 (\$07D0, \$B3) , Source: 1001, 91 (\$03E9, \$5E
8/17/92	5:29:23 PM	Connecting Ethernet.
8/17/92	5:29:18 PM	Checking seed info on Printer Port.
8/17/92	5:29:14 PM	Opening Ethernet.
8/17/92	5:29:12 PM	Opening Printer Port.
8/17/92	5:29:12 PM	*** Router is starting up with AURP Debugging 2.
8/17/92	5:28:26 PM	*** Router is stopping.
8/17/92	4:17:16 PM	Connecting Ethernet.
8/17/92	4:17:11 PM	Checking seed info on Printer Port.
8/17/92	4:17:07 PM	Opening Ethernet.
8/17/92	4:17:05 PM	Opening Printer Port.
8/17/92	4:17:05 PM	*** Router is starting up with AURP Debugging 2.
8/17/92	4:16:59 PM	*** Router is stopping.
8/13/92	1:54:46 PM	Unknown Network Number. Dest: 27004, 22 (\$697C, \$16) , Source: 1001, 91 (\$03E9, \$5E
8/13/92	12:04:39 PM	Unknown Network Number. Dest: 27004, 22 (\$697C, \$16) , Source: 1001, 91 (\$03E9, \$5E
8/13/92	11:58:46 AM	Connecting Ethernet.

Figure 10-1 The Router Log

When the Router Log is the active window, you can clear the Router Log by choosing Clear Log from the Edit menu.

Router Manager saves the Router Log as a text document in the Preferences folder. You can open this text document using most word-processing application programs.

You can use the Router Log to obtain information about the router's operation or to verify possible problems with the router. For information about using the Router Log to verify problems, see the section "Internet Problems" later in this chapter.

Internet problems

This section describes the symptoms, causes, and solutions for some internet problems that you might encounter during router operation, either exclusively on local internets, or on both local internets and wide area internets.

Before following any of these troubleshooting scenarios, verify that the network's hardware, cabling, or connections are not the source of the problem. In some cases, network problems, errors in the router setup, or the presence on the internet of a router that does not support AppleTalk Phase 2 are all possible causes of a symptom.

For additional information about problems with wide area internets, see *Using the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension* and *Using the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension*.

- △ **Important** If solving a problem requires that you modify a port configuration or other router setup information in the startup document, you must first stop the router. Use Router Manager to modify the router's startup document, then restart the router. △

One or more devices appear in the wrong zone in the Chooser on one or more computers on the network.

Causes

Solutions

In a local internet:

After changing a zone name, the administrator restarted the router Macintosh without waiting the recommended delay period. Thus, the new zone name appears in the Chooser on only some computers on the network.

The administrator changed a zone name on the internet while a router was disconnected from the network, then reconnected the router.

Stop all routers connected to the network with the new zone name for at least ten minutes—allowing the routers to clear the obsolete zone information from their routing tables. Then restart all of the routers and they will update their routing tables with the new zone name automatically. See “Stopping the Router” in Chapter 8 and “Starting the Router” in Chapter 3.

On a router Macintosh that is concurrently being used as a file server or print server, the administrator selected the wrong AppleTalk connection as the user port or selected the wrong zone, using the Network control panel.

Stop the router, then change the user port or the zone, as necessary. See “Designating an AppleTalk Connection as the User Port” in Chapter 2 or “Changing the Router’s Zone” in Chapter 8.

Devices that should be in the same zone are not.

Causes

Solutions

In a local internet:

When configuring ports on a router, the administrator specified one or more zone names incorrectly.

For each network affected by this problem, identify any incorrect zone names in the zone list and specify zone names that are identical to those on the seed router. See “Renaming a Zone in the Zone List” in Chapter 4.

One or more devices on the network are in the wrong zone, because the user or administrator selected the wrong zone name in the Network control panel.

On each device affected by this problem, select the proper zone name in the Network control panel. See “Changing the Router’s Zone” in Chapter 8.

A device does not seem to be functioning or the device performing a particular function is not the device that the user selected.

Causes

Solutions

In a local internet:

Duplicate device names exist in a zone, because one or more of the devices having the same name were named before being connected to the network, or zones containing devices having the same name were merged. AppleTalk protocols detect duplicate devices names only at startup.

In zones affected by this problem, check the device list for devices having the same name that are of the type experiencing problems. Rename all but one of the devices having the same name.

Restart all devices of the type experiencing problems. Device-name conflicts are resolved automatically at device startup, generally by suffixing each duplicate name with a number.

A hidden device appears in the Chooser on one or more computers on the network from which it is hidden.

Causes

Solutions

In a local internet:

A redundant path to the device exists.

Hide the device when configuring the port through which a redundant path to the device exists. See “Hiding Devices on an Internet” in Chapter 4.

Change the network topology to eliminate the redundant path to the device.

The device name was specified incorrectly.

Determine whether an incorrect device name is listed in the Hide Devices dialog box. Check for extra spaces or nonprinting characters in the name. Remove the incorrect device name, then add the correct device name to the list. See “Removing a Device From a List of Hidden Devices” in Chapter 8 and “Hiding Devices on an Internet” in Chapter 4.

The wrong option—either “no devices” or “all devices except those listed”—is selected in the Hide pop-up menu in the Hide Devices dialog box.	Select the appropriate option in the Hide pop-up menu. See “Hiding Devices on an Internet” in Chapter 4.
The device is hidden from the wrong port.	Select the correct port in the “from” pop-up menu. See “Hiding Devices on an Internet” in Chapter 4.

A device name does not appear in the Chooser on one or more computers on the network.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
<i>In a local internet:</i>	
A router on the internet is hiding the device.	Determine whether any router on the path from the device to the computer that cannot access the device is hiding the device. Remove the device from the list of hidden devices in that router’s port configuration. See “Removing a Device From a List of Hidden Devices” in Chapter 8.
<i>In a wide area internet:</i>	
The routing distance to the missing network exceeds 15 hops.	Change the placement of routers in the network, making all paths between networks shorter than 15 hops. If a tunnel or half-routing link connects the networks, network-number remapping is active, and no loops exist on the internet, configure the tunneling ports to allow a routing distance that is greater than 15 hops. See “Allowing Routing Distances Greater Than 15 Hops” in Chapter 7. On a tunneling port, if “Increase routing distance by” is selected in the Options dialog box, either deselect it or decrease the number of hops. See “Increasing the Routing Distance Through a Port” in Chapter 7.

(continued) ➤

In the seed routers' setup, two or more networks have the same network number or overlapping network ranges, causing only the zones or devices in the network found first during the Chooser's zone or device search—usually that having the shortest routing distance—to be displayed. This also occurs when network-number remapping is active and the network range for a local network overlaps the remapping range.

Assign a different network number or range to the network for which zones and devices do not appear in the Chooser. See “Changing a Network Number or Range” in Chapter 8.

In a wide area internet:

Specify a remapping range that does not conflict with an existing network number or range. See “Remapping Remote Network Numbers” in Chapter 7.

If a tunnel or half-routing link connects the networks having conflicting numbers or ranges, activate network-number remapping. See “Remapping Remote Network Numbers” in Chapter 7.

In a wide area internet:

Network hiding is active on a tunneling port and the computer on which the device does not appear in the Chooser is on a network that is hidden from the network on which the device resides.

Remove the network on which the computer resides from the list of hidden networks in the port configuration for that router. See “Removing a Network From a List of Hidden Networks” in Chapter 8.

Move the device on which the Chooser is running to a network that is not hidden.

Network-number remapping is active on a tunneling port and the Router Log indicates that the router failed to remap all of the network numbers, because they did not fit into the remapping range specified.

Specify a larger remapping range. See “Remapping Remote Network Numbers” in Chapter 7.

Hop-count weighting is active on a tunneling port and a device across the tunnel is more than 15 hops away from a computer on the network connected to that port. Thus, that device does not appear in the Chooser on the computer across the tunnel.

Deactivate hop-count weighting on that port. See “Increasing the Routing Distance Through a Port” in Chapter 7.

One or more zones or networks do not appear in the Network Information window in Router Manager.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
<i>In a local internet:</i>	
Either the port to which a missing network is directly connected is inactive or a port on a router in the path to a missing network is inactive.	Determine whether a port is inactive on a router in the path from the network or networks to the router on which the networks do not appear in the Network Information window. Activate the port. See “Activating and Deactivating Ports” in Chapter 8.
The number of routing table entries exceeds the maximum specified. Thus, the routing table does not contain a complete list of networks.	Check the Router Log to verify the problem. Stop the router. In the Set Startup dialog box, increase the number of routing table entries. Restart the router Macintosh and start the router. See “Specifying the Routing Table’s Maximum Size” in Chapter 3. Combine two or more networks into one. Use a bridge to combine separate networks into a larger network, having a single network number or range.
The number of zones defined in the internet exceeds the maximum number of zone table entries specified. Thus, the zone table does not contain a complete list of zones.	Check the Router Log to verify the problem. Stop the router. In the Set Startup dialog box, increase the number of zone table entries. Restart the router Macintosh, then start the router. See “Specifying the Zone Table’s Maximum Size” in Chapter 3.
The port information for an AppleTalk port configured as a seed port conflicts with that for an existing seed port on another router, so the router deactivated the port having conflicting port information.	Check the Router Log to verify the problem. Specify the correct port information for the AppleTalk port with conflicting port information. See “Adding or Changing a Port Configuration” in Chapter 8. Check the Router Log to verify the problem. Make the AppleTalk port with conflicting port information a nonseed port. See “Configuring a LocalTalk Port” or “Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port” in Chapter 4.

(continued) ➡

There is no seed router on that network and the routers connected to that network have not yet obtained its network number.	On a router connected to that network, designate an AppleTalk port as the seed port, then specify a network number or range and a zone name or list for that port. See “Configuring a LocalTalk Port” or “Configuring an EtherTalk or TokenTalk Port” in Chapter 4.
The routing distance to the missing network exceeds 15 hops.	Change the placement of routers in the network, making all paths between networks shorter than 15 hops. <i>In a wide area internet:</i> If a tunnel or half-routing link connects the networks, network-number remapping is active, and no loops exist on the internet, configure the tunneling ports to allow a routing distance that is greater than 15 hops. See “Allowing Routing Distances Greater Than 15 Hops” in Chapter 7. On a tunneling port, if “Increase routing distance by” is selected in the Options dialog box, either deselect it or decrease the number of hops. See “Increasing the Routing Distance Through a Port” in Chapter 7.
<i>In a wide area internet:</i>	
The port information for a half-routing port contains an invalid password and the half-routing link could not be established.	Check the Router Log to verify the problem. Type the correct password. See “Entering Your Password to Open Router Manager” in Chapter 8.
The port information for a half-routing port contains an incorrect phone number and the half-routing link could not be established.	Check the Router Log to verify the problem. Type the correct phone number. See “Originating a Connection” and “Calling Back to Establish a Connection” in Chapter 5.
The router was unable to establish or maintain a half-routing link.	For information about troubleshooting half-routing links, see “Problems With Wide Area Internets” later in this chapter.

Network hiding is active on a tunneling port and the network is hidden.	Determine whether any router on the path from the network to the computer that cannot access the network is hiding the network. Remove the network from the list of hidden networks in that router's port configuration. See "Removing a Network From a List of Hidden Networks" in Chapter 8.
Network-number remapping is active on a tunneling port, and the router detected a loop on the internet and deactivated that port. However, the routing distance to the network over the redundant path exceeds the maximum of 15 hops.	Check the Router Log to verify the problem. Change the network topology to eliminate all loops. Turn off network-number remapping in the Options dialog box. See "Remapping Remote Network Numbers" in Chapter 7.

Problems with wide area internets

This section describes problems that are encountered only on wide area internets. For additional information about problems with wide area internets, see *Using the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension* and *Using the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension*.

In the Network Information window in Router Manager, the forwarding port indicated for a network should be a half-routing or tunneling port, but is not.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
Network-number remapping is active on a tunneling port, and the router detected a loop on the internet and deactivated that port.	Check the Router Log to verify the problem. Change the network topology to eliminate all loops. Turn off network-number remapping in the Options dialog box. See "Remapping Remote Network Numbers" in Chapter 7.

None of the zones or devices on networks across a tunnel appear in the Chooser on computers on networks connected to an exterior router attempting to communicate through that tunnel.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
Network hiding is active on a tunneling port and the networks on which the zones and devices reside are hidden.	Determine whether any router on the path from the zones and devices to the computer that cannot access the zones and devices is hiding the networks on which the zones and devices reside. Remove those networks from the list of hidden networks in that router's port configuration. See "Removing a Network From a List of Hidden Networks" in Chapter 8.
Network hiding is active on a tunneling port and the computer that cannot access the zones and devices is on a network that is hidden from the networks on which the zones and devices reside.	Remove the network on which the computer resides from the list of hidden networks in the port configuration for that router. See "Removing a Network From a List of Hidden Networks" in Chapter 8. Move the device on which the Chooser is running to a network that is not hidden.
The networks on which the zones and devices reside are more than 15 hops away from the computer on which the zones and devices do not appear in the Chooser.	If a tunnel or half-routing link connects the networks, and no loops exist on the internet, configure the tunneling ports to allow a routing distance that is greater than 15 hops. See "Allowing Routing Distances Greater Than 15 Hops" in Chapter 7. On a tunneling port, if "Increase routing distance by" is selected in the Options dialog box, deselect it. See "Increasing the Routing Distance Through a Port" in Chapter 7.
Network-number remapping is active on a tunneling port, and the router detected a loop on the internet and deactivated that port. However, the routing distance to the network over the redundant path exceeds the maximum of 15 hops.	Check the Router Log to verify the problem. Change the network topology to eliminate all loops. Turn off network-number remapping in the Options dialog box. See "Remapping Remote Network Numbers" in Chapter 7.
Network-number remapping is active on a tunneling port, the user port is not a seed port, and no seed router is present on the network connected to the user port	Configure a router on that network as a seed router. Configure the user port as a seed port.

None of the zones or devices on a network across a half-routing link appear in the Chooser on computers on networks connected to the router that is attempting to establish that half-routing link.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
The administrator typed a valid password in the Port Info window for the half-routing port on the router originating or answering the call.	Type the correct password in the Password and Reenter Password text boxes. See “Originating a Connection” and “Answering to Establish a Connection” in Chapter 5.
The administrator selected the call mode and typed an incorrect phone number in the Port Info window for the half-routing port.	Type the correct phone number in the Phone Number text box in the Port Info window for the half-routing port on which the call mode is selected. See “Originating a Connection” in Chapter 5.
With the answer-and-call-back mode selected, the phone number called back is not that of the router originating the connection.	Type the correct phone number in the Phone Number text box in the Port Info window for the half-routing port on which the answer-and-call-back mode is selected. See “Calling Back to Establish a Connection” in Chapter 5.
The phone line was noisy and the modem could not maintain the connection.	Consult the user’s guide for your modem to determine whether this has occurred. If the problem persists, contact the modem manufacturer or the phone company.
The connection was broken and the modem was unable to reestablish the connection.	Reset the modems by turning them off, then on again. Reset the half-routing port by deactivating, then reactivating the port.
The modem configurations are incompatible.	Determine whether the modems are using the correct modem scripts by checking the connection selected in the Port Info window for each half-routing port. If not, select the appropriate connection. Consult the user’s guides for the modems to determine whether they are configured properly and reconfigure them, as necessary.

Zones or devices on a network across a half-routing link appear intermittently in the Chooser on computers on the network connected to the router that established the half-routing link.

Causes

Solutions

The amount of network traffic is excessive for a slow half-routing link.

Check the Port Statistics window to determine whether the packet buffer is overflowing. If so, use a faster network system—such as bridged Ethernet—or a tunnel instead of the half-routing link. See “Monitoring Network Errors” in Chapter 9.

Connect a modem with a faster data transmission rate to the router.

Check the Port Statistics window to determine whether the packet buffer is overflowing. If so, provide a redundant path to the parts of the internet connected by the half-routing link. See “Monitoring Network Errors” in Chapter 9.

Provide a redundant path, and use a faster network system or a tunnel to connect the parts of the internet connected by the half-routing link.

The phone line is noisy and the modem reduced its transmission rate to 2400 baud.

Consult the user’s guide for your modem to determine whether this has occurred. If the problem persists, contact the modem manufacturer or the phone company.

Zones and devices on a hidden network appear in the Chooser on one or more computers on the network from which it is hidden.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
A redundant path to the network exists.	Hide the network on the port through which a redundant path to the network exists. See “Hiding Networks in an Internet” in Chapter 7. Change the network topology to eliminate the redundant path to the device.
The administrator specified the starting number of the network range incorrectly.	Determine whether a network number listed in the Options dialog box as the starting number of a network range is incorrect. Remove the incorrect network number, then add the correct network number to the list. See “Removing a Network From a List of Hidden Networks” in Chapter 8 and “Hiding Networks in an Internet” in Chapter 7.
The administrator selected the wrong option—“all networks except those listed”—in the Hide pop-up menu in the Options dialog box.	Select an appropriate option in the Hide pop-up menu. See “Hiding Networks in an Internet” in Chapter 7.

A zone name associated with a network that is no longer accessible appears in the Chooser on one or more computers on the network.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
On a half-routing or tunneling port, if a network that goes down is clustered and any other networks in the cluster remain on the internet, its zone names still appear in zone lists.	When you can interrupt network services, deactivate the port connected to the network, wait at least ten minutes, then reactivate the port to force reclustering. See “Activating and Deactivating Ports” in Chapter 8. Disconnect the other networks in the cluster.

A tunneling port is not activated when starting the router.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
The administrator is using a startup document in which the tunneling port is configured as inactive.	With the router running, click the Active button in the Port Info window for the tunneling port, then click Define to activate the port temporarily. See “Activating and Deactivating Ports” in Chapter 8. When the router is not running, click the Active button in the Port Info window for the tunneling port and click Define, then save the setup document with the tunneling port configured as active. See “Activating and Deactivating Ports” in Chapter 8.
Network-number remapping is active on a tunneling port, and the router detected a loop on the internet and deactivated that port.	Check the Router Log to verify the problem. Change the network topology to eliminate all loops. Turn off network-number remapping in the Options dialog box. See “Remapping Remote Network Numbers” in Chapter 7.

Once the primary path to a network again becomes accessible, the router continues sending some packets over a backup path.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
The network could not detect the reactivation of the primary path and the backup path is the shortest path to the network.	To use the primary path exclusively, deactivate the port that is functioning as the backup path, wait at least ten minutes, then reactivate the port. Stop the router on which a port is designated as a backup path for at least ten minutes, allowing the router to reestablish its primary path to the network. Then restart the router. See “Stopping the Router” in Chapter 8 and “Starting the Router” in Chapter 3.

The routing tables of the routers on the internet contain network numbers for unknown networks at various distances, many of which have the same zone names.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
Network-number remapping and clustering are active on a tunneling port, and the router failed to detect a loop on the internet.	Check the network topology to determine whether a loop exists across a tunneling port on which network-number remapping is active. If so, deactivate the port. See “Activating and Deactivating Ports” in Chapter 8.

Problems with the Apple Internet Router

This section describes the symptoms, causes, and solutions for some problems that you might encounter with the Apple Internet Router. Before investigating possible problems with the router, verify that the network or the internet is not the source of the problem.

A problem may exist with the Apple Internet Router if none of the zones or devices on a network connected directly to the router appear in the zone lists or device lists in the Chooser on computers in other networks, or in the Network Information window in Router Manager on other routers in the internet.

Possible causes of problems with the router include

- a break in one of its network connections
- hardware malfunctions
- hardware constraints—such as insufficient memory installed in the router Macintosh
- errors in the installation of the router software
- errors in the router setup
- changes made to the router Macintosh while the router is running—such as the startup disk becoming full

△ **Important** Stop the Apple Internet Router before attempting to solve problems with the router. If a problem exists with the router Macintosh or a component of the network, also shut down the router Macintosh before troubleshooting the problem. Once you have determined the source of the problem and have corrected it, restart the router Macintosh, if necessary, then start the router. △

Delays of up to several minutes occur when starting up the router Macintosh.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
An Ethernet cable that is connected to an Ethernet port on the router Macintosh is not terminated properly. Both sides of a standard T-connector require an Ethernet cable terminator. <i>Note:</i> The Apple Ethernet Thin Coax Transceiver and Apple Ethernet cable are self-terminating. If you connect these products to this port, this problem cannot occur.	If no Ethernet cable is connected to the port and the media is thin coaxial cable, plug a T-connector into the port, then terminate both sides of the connector with Ethernet cable terminators. If a T-connector is already plugged into the port and an Ethernet cable is connected to one side of the T-connector, terminate the other side of the connector with an Ethernet cable terminator. Terminate Ethernet cables connected to a T-connector plugged into the port.
A terminator is installed on a self-terminating Ethernet Thin Coax Transceiver. Therefore, the transceiver is doubly terminated.	Remove the terminator from the Apple Ethernet Thin Coax Transceiver.
If you have determined that the port and its cables are connected and terminated properly, a break may exist in the Ethernet cable.	Locate the defective cable and replace it.

None of the zones or devices on a part of the internet appear in the Chooser on computers on networks connected directly to the router.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
The administrator designated the wrong setup document as the startup document.	Designate the correct setup document as the startup document. See “Selecting a Startup Document” in Chapter 3.
An error occurred on a specific port, which was not activated when the router was started.	Check the Router Log to determine whether an error occurred on a specific port and take the appropriate corrective action.

The networks about which the router is propagating network information are not those listed in the router’s port configurations.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
The administrator designated the wrong setup document as the startup document.	Designate the correct setup document as the startup document. See “Selecting a Startup Document” in Chapter 3.

You cannot read the information in the Network Information window in Router Manager because it redraws too frequently.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
The Network Information window redraws whenever the information changes.	Click Pause to freeze the display temporarily. Then, click Resume and the information displayed will reflect all changes that have occurred in the interim.

The Port Statistics window indicates that many packets have overflowed their buffer or that many data link errors have occurred, and the router's packet transmission rate is slow.

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Solutions</i>
The router is unable to process all of the packets that it receives.	Install the router software on a Macintosh with a faster microprocessor. If another network service is running on the router Macintosh, turn it off. If an application program other than Router Manager is open on the router Macintosh, quit it.

Router Manager error messages

Router Manager error messages report most problems with the Apple Internet Router, including setup errors. Most of these error messages are self-explanatory. This section provides information only about those errors requiring further explanation or having more than one possible error-recovery procedure. For detailed information about correcting errors in the router setup, see the section “Creating a Setup Document” in Chapter 3.

For information about error messages for the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension, see *Using the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension*. For information about error messages for the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension, see *Using the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension*.

If you encounter a problem that you cannot resolve through any other remedial action, reinstall the router software. See Chapter 2, “Installing the Basic Connectivity Package,” for information about installing the router software. When you reinstall the router software, the startup options and administrator’s password that you have specified are lost.

Messages displayed when opening Router Manager

This section provides additional information about some messages you might encounter when opening Router Manager.

Before opening Router Manager, you must use the Router Installer to install the Apple Internet Router software on the startup disk. Please install the router software, then try again.

You cannot simply copy Router Manager onto the startup disk by dragging its icon to the startup disk icon. Nor can you run Router Manager on the Installer disk. See Chapter 2, “Installing the Basic Connectivity Package,” for information about installing the router software.

You cannot set up the router because there are no AppleTalk connection files in the Extensions folder. Please use the Router Installer to reinstall the router software, including these files, then try again.

AppleTalk connection files allow the router to communicate over various media. See Chapter 2, “Installing the Basic Connectivity Package,” for information about installing the router software.

There is not enough memory available to start Router Manager. Please increase the memory allocation for Router Manager in its Info window, then try again.

To increase the amount of memory that Router Manager can use, select its icon in the Finder, then choose Get Info from the File menu. When the Router Manager Info window appears, increase its memory allocation in the “Current size” text box to a size that is greater than the suggested size. To be able to allocate a sufficient amount of memory for Router Manager, you may need to install more memory in the router Macintosh.

Alternatively, to make enough memory available to start Router Manager, you can quit any other applications that are currently open. Running the Apple Internet Router requires a Macintosh computer with at least four megabytes of memory installed. To run other applications concurrently on the router Macintosh, you may need to install more memory in the router Macintosh.

Messages displayed in Router Manager when there is insufficient memory

If there is insufficient memory available for Router Manager to perform an operation, an error message appears.

There is not enough memory available to [perform this operation].

Many error messages take this form. Some of these error messages appear when you are creating a setup document, some only when the router is running, and others regardless of whether the router is running.

In most cases, you should try closing some windows to make more memory available for the operation. The Network Information window and the Router Log require the most memory. If the Network Information window or the Router Log is currently open, close it.

If closing some windows does not make a sufficient amount of memory available, increase the memory allocation for Router Manager. To increase the amount of memory that Router Manager can use, quit Router Manager, then select its icon in the Finder and choose Get Info from the File menu. When the Router Manager Info window appears, increase the memory allocation in the “Current size” text box to a size that is greater than the suggested size. Finally, restart Router Manager. Allocating a sufficient amount of memory for Router Manager may require that you install more memory in the router Macintosh.

Router Manager is running out of memory. Please close some windows.

This message may appear regardless of whether the router is running. If closing some windows—for example, the Network Information window or the Router Log—does not make a sufficient amount of memory available, increase the memory allocation for Router Manager, as described earlier in this section.

There is not enough memory available to add all of the zone names that you have selected to the zone list. Please remove other zone names from the list, then try again.

This message may appear when you are creating a setup document. If all of the zone names in the zone list must remain in the list, try closing some windows to make more memory available for the zone list. If closing some windows does not make a sufficient amount of memory available, increase the memory allocation for Router Manager, as described earlier in this section.

There is not enough memory available to display the complete Router Log. Router Manager can display only the most recent information in the Router Log.

This message may appear when the router is running. If you want to display the complete Router Log, try closing some windows to make more memory available for the Router Log. If closing some windows does not make a sufficient amount of memory available, increase the memory allocation for Router Manager, as described earlier in this section.

Messages displayed when the router is not running

This section provides additional information about some error messages Router Manager might display when the router is not running.

The router name “=” is not allowed. Please specify a different router name.

AppleTalk protocols allow the equal sign (=) to be used as a wildcard character in the names of network devices, signifying “all possible values.” You cannot use the equal sign as a router name.

Messages displayed when creating a setup document

This section provides additional information about some messages Router Manager might display when you are creating a setup document while the router is not running.

This setup document includes port information for an AppleTalk connection that is not available on this Macintosh. Router Manager cannot display and the router cannot use this port information.

If you start the router using this setup document, the router will not activate the port for which no AppleTalk connection file is available in the Extensions folder. If you want the router to activate this port at router startup, you must first quit Router Manager, use the Router Installer to reinstall the router software, including the AppleTalk connection file, reopen Router Manager, then start the router. Chapter 2, “Installing the Basic Connectivity Package,” explains how to install the router software.

If this message appears for one of the following reasons, take the action described:

- A network interface card has been moved to a different expansion slot. Reconfigure the port.
- A network interface card has been removed from the router Macintosh. Close the setup document without saving any changes that you have made to it, then replace the interface card.
- The setup document has become corrupted. Create a new setup document. For information about creating a setup document, see the section “Creating a Setup Document” in Chapter 3.
- The setup document was created on a different router Macintosh with different hardware and software installed. Save the setup document and Router Manager will clear the port information for that AppleTalk connection.

This port currently uses the [Access Method] access method. Changing the access method to [Access Method] deletes the existing port information. Are you sure you want to change the access method?

You can configure only one access method—either LocalTalk or DialUp—for the printer port and for the modem port. For more information about configuring AppleTalk ports, see Chapter 4, “Configuring an AppleTalk Port.”

Another port defined in this setup document is already using the network number that you specified. Please specify a different network number.

Each network on the internet must have a unique network number. The network number might be within a network range configured on another port.

The zone name “*” is not allowed. Please specify a different zone name.

AppleTalk protocols allow the asterisk (*) to be used as a wildcard character, signifying “this zone”—that is, the zone in which the device specifying the zone name resides. You cannot use the asterisk as a zone name.

Router Manager was unable to obtain any zone names from the current AppleTalk connection.

No other routers are currently accessible on the network connected to the port designated as the current AppleTalk connection for the router Macintosh in the Network control panel. Check for network problems. For information about troubleshooting such problems, see the section “Network Problems” earlier in this chapter.

The two passwords that you typed do not match. Please type the passwords again.

You can use uppercase and lowercase letters to distinguish passwords. You must type your password *exactly* as you did the first time, including your use of uppercase and lowercase letters.

The device type “=” is not allowed. Please specify a different device type.

AppleTalk protocols allow the equal sign (=) to be used as a wildcard character in the names of network devices, signifying “all possible values.” You cannot use the equal sign as the name of a device type.

The device name “=” is not allowed. Please specify a different device name.

AppleTalk protocols allow the equal sign (=) to be used as a wildcard character in the names of network devices, signifying “all possible values.” You cannot use the equal sign as a device name.

Router Manager cannot save the setup document “Document Name” because you do not have the proper access privileges.

The version of the setup document that was last saved or the folder or disk on which you are trying to save the setup document may be locked. To verify that the setup document, folder, or disk is locked, select it in the Finder, then choose Get Info from the File menu. When the Info window appears, click the Locked checkbox to unlock the setup document, folder, or disk if it is locked.

Macintosh file sharing or AppleShare might be denying access to the folder or the disk containing the setup document. In the Finder, choose Sharing from the File menu. If necessary, change your access privileges in the dialog box that appears. Or, use AppleShare to change your access privileges to the folder or disk containing the setup document.

Messages displayed when starting the router

This section provides additional information about some messages you might encounter when starting the router.

◆ **Note** The Router Log provides additional information about some errors encountered when starting the router. This information may help you to determine the cause of the problem. For more information about the Router Log, see “Using the Router Log to Obtain Information About Router Operation” earlier in this chapter. ◆

The actual network address of this Macintosh is different from that specified for this computer’s AppleTalk connection in the startup document. Starting the router will interrupt this computer’s current network services. Are you sure you want to start the router?

If you start the router, it will change the network address of the Macintosh computer to that specified for the computer’s AppleTalk connection in the startup document.

The router cannot start because it was unable to find the startup document. Please select a different startup document, then try again.

If the startup document has been deleted from the startup disk, copy your backup version of the setup document that was designated as the startup document to the startup disk. Then, you must reselect the startup document in the Set Startup dialog box.

The router cannot start because the port corresponding to this computer's current AppleTalk connection is undefined in the startup document. Please define that port or use the Network control panel to select an AppleTalk connection that corresponds to a defined port.

If you need to define the port that corresponds to the current AppleTalk connection for the router Macintosh, open the Network control panel to determine its AppleTalk connection.

The router was unable to start because an error occurred while installing an AppleTalk connection driver for a configured port.

Check the Router Log to obtain information about the cause of the problem. If this message appears for one of the following reasons, take the action described:

- A network interface card has been moved to a different expansion slot. Reconfigure the port.
- A network interface card has been removed from the router Macintosh. Replace the interface card or remove the port configuration for the corresponding AppleTalk connection from the setup document. For information about removing a port configuration, see the section “Removing a Port Configuration” in Chapter 8.
- There is a problem with the physical network. For example, an Ethernet cable may not be terminated properly. Identify the location of the problem and correct it.
- There is not enough memory to install the AppleTalk connection driver. To run the Apple Internet Router, you must install additional memory.

The router cannot start because it was unable to access AppleTalk network services.

AppleTalk network services may be inaccessible due to a network problem. For information about troubleshooting such problems, see the section “Network Problems” earlier in this chapter.

This message may also appear because all available node IDs on a network connected to the router are currently in use. You may need to expand the network range. See the section “Changing a Network Number or Range” in Chapter 8.

The router cannot start because the Macintosh does not have enough memory.

Running the Apple Internet Router requires a Macintosh computer with at least four megabytes of memory installed. To run other applications concurrently on the router Macintosh, you may need to install more memory in the router Macintosh.

The router cannot start because there is no seed router on the network connected to the [Port Description] port.

This message appears only if a nonseed router is starting for the first time, and there is no seed router on a network connected to one of its ports and that port is not a LocalTalk port. A nonseed router will start if there is no seed router on a network connected to one of its LocalTalk ports.

The router cannot start because the network number [###] that you specified for one of the router's ports is different from the network's actual number [###]. Please use Router Manager to specify the port's correct network number, then try again.

Obtain the correct network number for the port from another router on the network connected to the port. Alternatively, you can make the port a nonseed port.

The router cannot start because the network range [###] to [###] that you specified for one of the router's ports is different from the network's actual range [###] to [###]. Please use Router Manager to specify the port's correct network range, then try again.

Obtain the correct network range for the port from another router on the network connected to the port. Alternatively, you can make the port a nonseed port.

The router cannot start because "Zone Name," the zone name that you specified for one of the router's ports, is different from the network's actual zone name, "Zone Name." Please use Router Manager to specify the port's correct zone name, then try again.

Obtain the correct zone name for the port from another router on the network connected to the port. Alternatively, you can make the port a nonseed port.

The router cannot start because the zone name “Zone Name” in the zone list for the network range [###] to [###] is not in the network’s actual zone list. Please use Router Manager to specify the correct zone name for that network range, then try again.

Obtain the correct zone name for the network range from another router on the network. Alternatively, you can make the port a nonseed port.

The router cannot start because the zone list you specified for the network range [###] to [###] does not contain the zone name “Zone Name,” which is in the network’s actual zone list. Please use Router Manager to specify the correct zone name for that network range, then try again.

Obtain the correct zone name for the network range from another router on the network. Alternatively, you can make the port a nonseed port.

The router cannot start because the zone list you specified for the network range [###] to [###] is different from the network’s actual zone list. Please use Router Manager to specify the correct zone list for that network range, then try again.

Obtain the correct zone list for the network range from another router on the network. Alternatively, you can make the port a nonseed port.

The router cannot start because “Zone Name,” the default zone that you selected for one of the router’s ports, is different from the network’s actual default zone, “Zone Name.” Please use Router Manager to select the port’s correct default zone, then try again.

You must select the same default zone for a network range on each seed router on the network. Obtain the correct default zone for the network range from another router on the network. Alternatively, you can make the port a nonseed port.

Messages displayed when the router is running

This section provides additional information about some error messages Router Manager might display when the router is running.

Router Manager cannot activate the port because conflicting network or zone information exists on another router.

While the port was inactive, conflicting network or zone information for the network connected to the port was specified on another router on that network. Obtain the correct network number, network range, zone name, or zone list for the port from the other router.

Router Manager cannot export data to the folder or disk selected because you do not have the proper access privileges.

The folder or the disk to which you are trying to export data may be locked. To verify that the folder or the disk is locked, select it in the Finder, then choose Get Info from the File menu. When the Info window appears, click the Locked checkbox to unlock the folder or the disk if it is locked.

Macintosh file sharing or AppleShare may be denying access to the folder or the disk to which you are trying to export data. In the Finder, choose Sharing from the File menu. If necessary, change your access privileges in the dialog box that appears. Or, use AppleShare to change your access privileges to the folder or the disk.

11 The GlobalTalk Network

This chapter gives an overview of the GlobalTalk network—what it is, how it formed, and how AppleTalk network administrators can connect to it. Guidance on matters relating to networking and the Apple Internet Router software for use on GlobalTalk is given to facilitate joining this truly global phenomenon.

GlobalTalk—a background

A short history of AppleTalk

In 1984 Apple Computer, Inc. introduced the Macintosh and changed everyday computing forever with its accessible GUI.

A year later, Apple introduced AppleTalk, its new networking protocol, and LocalTalk, its new networking connection hardware, for connecting Macintoshes, Lisas, Apple IIs, and LaserWriters (plus the occasional IBM PC-compatible via an ISA expansion card, released in 1987).

Plug-and-Play had come to networking with the introduction of AppleTalk, and with no configuration, a network of devices could auto-negotiate its own network topology. AppleTalk “zones” could be connected via hardware bridges to connect, for example, computers in different company departments.

In the following years, EtherTalk (AppleTalk over Ethernet), Token Ring support, AppleShare (Apple’s network file server implementation), and, perhaps most importantly, AppleTalk Phase 2 were released.

AppleTalk Phase 2 took network configuration from a hardware-based model to more a software-defined model, and increased the number of nodes supported per segment to 253.

Networks could be joined via remote connections, zones could co-exist on single physical networks, and software such as Apple Internet Router allowed AppleTalk network administrators to connect networks around the globe via EtherTalk and Token Ring networks, with little need to consider underlying network transport protocols or hardware transport layers.

AppleTalk was abandoned by Apple with the release of Mac OS X v10.6 Snow Leopard in 2009.

GlobalTalk—a phenomenon 40 years in the making

In preparation for MARCHintosh 2024, several Apple retrocomputing enthusiasts (principally [@paulrickards](#), [@billgoats](#), and [@vga256](#)) worked on establishing connections between their AppleTalk networks over the Internet in the second half of February 2024.

After trying several solutions, they settled on Apple Internet Router, and made their first successful connection at the end of February—other nodes started joining the nascent GlobalTalk¹ “internet” in early March 2024.

¹The name “GlobalTalk” was coined by [@vga256](#) on [26 February 2024](#)

In short order, numerous retrocomputing enthusiasts expressed a desire to connect, a coordinating spreadsheet was created, and nodes began appearing from around the world.

Some enthusiasts had physical Macintoshes which were compatible with Apple Internet Router, while others relied on emulated machines.

Whichever type of machine acted as the primary AppleTalk router for a node, by the end of the month, it was not uncommon to see over 50 nodes connected at any one time.

And the machines “behind” those AppleTalk routers ranged from original Macintoshes, Lisas, and Apple IIs, to modern clones, virtualised systems, Windows servers, and printers by the truckload (dot matrix, inkjet and laser).

Some nodes, such as my own, had no original hardware in place—only virtualised computers and modern printers.

However, the joy of connecting to such an antiquated system which proved to be robust and relatively easy to set up, was shared by all node administrators, even if there were occasional hiccups.

This chapter aims to describe the GlobalTalk network in terms of Apple Internet Router and its configuration, discusses networking requirements to support downtime-tolerant connections between GlobalTalk nodes, refers to the original guide for some details, and, lastly, considers methods of connecting nodes other than Apple Internet Router (both hardware and software).

◆ **Note** In this chapter, I distinguish between “internets” as used in the *Apple Internet Router Administrator’s Guide*, i.e. an “internetwork” of networks, and “the” Internet, by specifying “AppleTalk internet/s” where the internetwork of AppleTalk networks provided via Apple Internet Router nodes is meant. GlobalTalk is simply an AppleTalk internet using IP tunnelling as defined in the *Apple Internet Router Administrator’s Guide*. ◆

◆ **Note** In this chapter, when “LocalTalk” is stated in relation to hardware, any LocalTalk-compatible hardware, such as PhoneNet, can be taken as being included. It is up to the reader to determine the best mix of hardware for the devices on their network/s. ◆

◆ **Note** In this chapter, when “EtherTalk” is stated, “TokenTalk” (AppleTalk over a Token Ring network) can be considered to be included in the reference. If any administrators have a TokenTalk network attached to GlobalTalk, they will need to consider any TokenTalk-specific information provided in other chapters of this guide. ◆

GlobalTalk technical basics

System requirements overview

At an abstract level, the requirements for joining GlobalTalk are relatively modest—however, they can be very specific.

- For basic connectivity, you need the following components:
- Membership of the Google Sheet which coordinates nodes and their basic connection details (see the section “[Joining GlobalTalk first steps](#)” later in this chapter)
- A real or virtual Macintosh computer capable of running Apple Internet Router v3 (see the section “System Requirements” in Chapter 2 and the section “[Real vs emulated hardware](#)” later in this chapter)

◆ **Note** While Chapter 2 specifies “System 7.0 or later”, Apple Internet Router runs best on System 7.1.x, is not compatible with later versions (some have reported success with System 7.5, but that is beyond the scope of this chapter), is not compatible with PowerPC Macintoshes, is not compatible with OpenTransport...you get the idea. ◆

◆ **Note** MacTCP v1 and v2 are both compatible with Apple Internet Router, but each have issues. MacTCP v1 is unable to resolve more than 8 CNAME DNS records in the Host IDs list—pre-resolved lists can be downloaded from some GlobalTalk nodes (see [Pre-prepared Host ID files for AIRConfig](#) later in this chapter). MacTCP v2 removes this limitation, but the Apple Internet Router logs get filled with gobbledegook messages. It is suggested to use MacTCP v1 until a GlobalTalk router’s connection is stable, at which time the administrator may wish to use the later version. It has been observed that Apple Internet Router creates much larger log files under MacTCP v2 because of these spurious status messages, so admins may wish to periodically rotate them. ◆

- An Ethernet connection for the Apple Internet Router host (see the sections “[Connecting to Ethernet](#)” and “[Network numbering and zones](#)” later in this chapter)
- An internet connection, ideally with a publicly-routable IP address (see the section “[CGNAT and Tier 1 VPNs](#)” later in this chapter)
- An ability to forward UDP port 387 to the Apple Internet Router host (see the section “[Network router configuration](#)” later in this chapter)

With these items in hand, you can connect to and begin exploring GlobalTalk before expanding out with more complex network configurations.

For example, the following can be added to the network:

- If your Apple Internet Router host has serial ports, additional LocalTalk segments can be added (one per port, see the section “[Network numbering and zones](#)” later in this chapter)
- AppleShare servers can be established to share retro-Macintosh programs and files (see the section “[File sharing](#)” later in this chapter)
- Printers can be made accessible to other GlobalTalk users (see the section “Printing” later in this chapter)
- Other AppleTalk aware programs, such as HyperCard, network-capable games (e.g. Bolo, Avara, Marathon, and Spectre), or BBS systems, can access—or provide—resources across the GlobalTalk network (see the section “[Other services](#)” later in this chapter)
- The AppleTalk network can be explored using several assessment and discovery tools (see the section “[Useful utilities and resources](#)” later in this chapter)
- Third party hardware AppleTalk bridges and software AppleTalk routers can be installed (see the section “[Mind the \(AIR\) gap—other AppleTalk bridges and routers](#)” later in this chapter)

Beyond the basics

While this chapter should be enough to guide you to connecting your Apple Internet Router host and perhaps some additional devices to your network, delving into the arcana of AppleTalk, Apple Internet Router, and the services and devices mentioned in this chapter is beyond the scope of such an addendum.

Consider, then, this chapter as a series of signposts, some with useful information, others redirecting you to the chapters, websites, and people where you will be able to find the information you need.

There is plenty yet to be discovered, and it is left as an exercise for the reader, in collaboration with other node administrators, to embark on the adventure of playing on the GlobalTalk network.

Joining GlobalTalk first steps

While there are some “Wild West” aspects to GlobalTalk, ensuring node visibility requires coordination regarding network numbers (see the section “Identifying networks on an internet” in Chapter 4 and the section “Specifying network ranges” in Appendix A).

To that end, a shared Google Sheet was established by the first node administrators to help such coordination.

The administration of the spreadsheet was handed over to the MARCHintosh organisers early in GlobalTalk’s life, and they manage it to this day.

While there are some basic behavioural rules set by the organisers, the basic expectation is that node administrators will work collaboratively together on configurations and any zone name or network number conflicts.

GlobalTalk has proven to be a hotbed of collaboration on topics ranging from basics like AppleTalk network design to the arcana of Docker images for Apple Internet Router and configuration of bridged networking in Linux for the QEMU emulation system, through to fun and games with Bolo servers being set up and chat systems being created in HyperCard specifically for GlobalTalk.

Head on over to the base GlobalTalk page at <https://marchintosh.com/globaltalk.html> (or http for older computers), read the basics and then follow the link to the *GlobalTalk Signup Form*.

Provide the requested information, and the application will be (manually) reviewed and approved, at which point an invite will be sent to your e-mail address with a link to the shared Google Sheet.

◆ **Note** A Google account is required to join the Sheet. This can be a GMail account, or your account using your usual e-mail, but you can only join with a Google Account. Your Google Account address will be visible to other node administrators. If this is a privacy concern for you, consider creating a dedicated Google Account for GlobalTalk use only. See also the section “[Security on GlobalTalk](#)” later in this chapter. ◆

Once you are on the spreadsheet, you may wish to add some additional details or expand your original answers.

At some point you’ll need to enter network number/s for any LocalTalk zone/s you are connecting to GlobalTalk, and a range of network numbers for EtherTalk connections.

Review the list for currently claimed numbers before settling on your own, as network numbers ***must be unique*** and ranges ***must not overlap*** with any other network numbers or ranges.

When starting out, a network range of just one number should be selected (see the section “[Network numbering and zones](#)” later in this chapter for more details on network numbers).

Real vs emulated hardware

Great satisfaction can come from establishing connections to networks like GlobalTalk on original hardware.

Extending the technology beyond either what was envisaged “back in the day”, or achievable by our younger selves (and their usually tight budgets) can be a wonderful learning experience and adventure for retro-computer enthusiasts.

Some of us, however, no longer have wide enough collections (or any collection) of the sorts of devices which can connect to AppleTalk networks.

But we might have memories of using such devices, or a desire to learn about such devices and networking technologies, and therefore can’t rely on original hardware.

The thrill is still present, even if it sometimes takes on different forms.

Original hardware and emulated systems are equal citizens when it comes to GlobalTalk. Emulation has become so good that the network software neither knows nor cares if it’s running on emulated hardware.

For those of us without the necessary hardware, several GlobalTalk node administrators have put together guides and setup files for various emulated systems to establish GlobalTalk connections and begin exploring the network.

◆ **Aside** The computers I have on my GlobalTalk node (a Quadra 800, a PowerPC Mac OS 9 machine, and a PowerPC Mac OS X v10.3 machine) are all virtual, but can access all GlobalTalk resources as if they were real computers. While AppleShare services could be provided by my Quadra 800, I use Netatalk 4 (which saw the return of AppleTalk networking after its absence in v3) for file sharing. I have a modern Brother printer and a Print to PDF printer created via CUPS (the Common Unix Printing System) on my AppleTalk network via Netatalk 4 printer sharing. ◆

Host system vs emulated system

When emulating another computer, references are often made to the “host” system. This is the system on which the emulation software runs.

For example, many GlobalTalk administrators are running QEMU on Linux or Windows—in this case, Linux and Windows are the host systems for the emulated QEMU system.

QEMU

The QEMU engine emulating a Quadra 800 with System 7.1 seems to be the most popular emulated hardware to act as an Apple Internet Router host.

Some guides and resources to get started with this system are at:

[@europlus: GlobalTalk Setup Files](#)

Base files to create a QEMU emulated Quadra 800, includes a 2GB disk image with System 7.1 and Apple Internet Router v3.0.1 pre-installed, ready for configuration. A [UTM](#) configuration file is now available.

◆ **Note** The .img disk image files (pre-installed and installer-based) are compatible with the BlueSCSI device. ◆

[@europlus: #MARCHintosh \[2024\] Wrap Up, GlobalTalk News](#)

Includes instructions for setting up bridged networking for QEMU on Ubuntu for GlobalTalk access. Check out the GlobalTalk tag on the site for related articles.

[@1Bit: Guide to get the QEMU emulator to work with GlobalTalk in Win11](#)

1Bit’s guide takes GlobalTalk node admins looking to use QEMU under Windows 11 for their Apple Internet Router system through setting up the necessary emulation files and networking.

[@fozztexx: QEMU+Apple Internet Router docker setup](#)

FoZZTexx reverse engineered the location of relevant data on QEMU disk images to configure QEMU from a Python script while spinning up a QEMU Docker instance!

[@Autumn: Setup Guide: VNC-enabled QEMU Apple Internet Router bridged host on non-GUI Debian 12](#)

This is how Autumn virtualised their GlobalTalk router to run as a VM on a headless Debian server

classicvirtio

An extension for QEMU which emulates a NuBus card enabling a tablet device (for making cursor movement in QEMU much smoother/sensible), a virtual shared folder from the host system, and an ability to read disk image files which do not have partitioning information (such as Basilisk II and Mini vMac disk images).

- ◆ **Note** classicvirtio requires QEMU v9.0 or later, or a patched version of QEMU v8.x. ◆

UTM (simple QEMU on macOS) and utmconfigs (pre-rolled UTM configurations)

UTM is a GUI skin for QEMU which runs on macOS. It makes setting up virtualised or emulated systems very easy, and surfaces common QEMU settings, while allowing some of the advanced command line options and switches to be set manually.

I use UTM for my PPC Mac OS 9.2.2 system, and I used a config file from utmconfigs to create my emulated Mac OS X v10.3 client machine to test AppleTalk access in Mac OS X, and another as the basis for the UTM package in my [GlobalTalk Setup Files](#) package.

The Mac OS 9.2.2 and Mac OS X v10.3 emulated systems both see GlobalTalk nodes and resources/devices as native network members via bridged Ethernet networking (see section “[Bridged vs NAT networking for emulated systems](#)” later in this chapter).

- ◆ **Note** UTM does not always have the current or stock version of QEMU within it, and extensions may not be included (for example, classicvirtio only works in PowerPC emulated systems, and only PCI interfaces are presented to the Quadra 800 emulation). ◆
- ◆ **Note** Installer disk images are not provided with these configuration files, and it is left as an exercise for the reader to image their own media appropriately for use with them. ◆

Other emulation systems

It is possible to use other emulators on GlobalTalk. Some suggested resources follow.

Basilisk II

Some administrators have successfully configured the Basilisk emulator to act as Apple Internet Router nodes and GlobalTalk client machines. A review of the GlobalTalk coordinating Google Sheet will allow administrators who wish to do the same to discuss such configuration with administrators who have successfully used such a configuration.

Mini vMac

Similarly, Mini vMac has had several appearances on GlobalTalk, sometimes utilising a TashTalk or TashRouter configuration. A review of the GlobalTalk coordinating Google Sheet will allow administrators who wish to do the same to discuss such configuration with administrators who have successfully used such a configuration.

[@mejs: Using TashTalk With Mini VMac To Participate In #GlobalTalk](#)

Vlado discusses some of the intricacies of the TashTalk hardware/software combo to allow LTtoUDP-aware applications and devices on modern networks to see LocalTalk traffic via a transceiver attached to the TashTalk (see discussion of the TashTalk and TashRouter in the “[Modern solutions](#)” section in this chapter).

Connecting to Ethernet

Built-in, expansion cards, BlueSCSI WiFi

Your Apple Internet Router host will need an Ethernet connection, either built-in or via an expansion card. I have even seen mention that a BlueSCSI's Dayna SCSI Ethernet emulation (via WiFi) can also act as an Apple Internet Router host's Ethernet port for EtherTalk and IP Tunnelling.

◆ **Note AAUI vs RJ45:** If your built-in or expansion card Ethernet has an AAUI (Apple Attachment Unit Interface) port, you'll need an AAUI Transceiver to convert to the RJ45 used on most Ethernet equipment these days. These are available from, for example, eBay for as little as USD\$15 (plus shipping). Make sure you get an AAUI to RJ45 transceiver! The BNC/Thin Ethernet adaptors will not allow you to connect to modern network routers and switches! ◆

Network speed considerations

A consideration when connecting equipment as old as that which runs Apple Internet Router (or older Mac OS versions) is that they will often struggle with auto-negotiation of Ethernet speeds (10/100/1000mb/s).

You can, however, use a slower switch or hub to connect to your main network, and then connect your retro-Macintoshes to that slower switch/hub. A 100mb/s switch/hub is likely to be a reasonable bridge between older devices and newer networks if your retro-Macintoshes are struggling.

I leave it as an exercise for the reader to locate such older networking equipment, and to understand the difference between a switch and a hub—that difference should not be

important when connecting to GlobalTalk, but switches may be better at auto-negotiation than 10mb/s hubs.

Bridged vs NAT networking for emulated systems

Emulated systems will be connecting via emulated Ethernet ports, and the network speed considerations mentioned above will not come into play.

But such emulated Ethernet ports do have a few issues which need to be addressed.

Firstly, most WiFi adaptors in emulator host systems will not transport AppleTalk traffic. This means the emulated system's Ethernet port will need to be “hard”-attached to an Ethernet port on the host system.

Emulation systems use a variety of methods to transport packets between the emulated Ethernet port and the “real” network.

One such method is that the host provides a NAT (Network Address Translation) virtual network—similar to an internet router offering NAT to its internal network.

Another method is “host-only” networking, where the emulated OS can only network to the host OS.

However, best results for emulated GlobalTalk Apple Internet Router nodes and client systems will be achieved using “Bridged Networking”, where the emulated Ethernet port is presented to the physical network by the host system as if it were a distinct physical port.

This allows the full routing of all Ethernet traffic from the emulated system to the physical network and vice versa.

The number of emulation systems and the number of host operating systems they operate under makes it infeasible to provide Bridged Networking examples here.

Some systems, such as UTM, provide a simple interface to select such a setup.

Others, such as QEMU running on Linux systems, will require setup and resultant initiating commands unique to the Linux system and emulator being used.

GlobalTalk node administrators have worked through, and sometimes documented, many of the system combinations which are used on the GlobalTalk network, so reach out to your fellow administrators using the #GlobalTalk hashtag (or by reviewing the GlobalTalk coordinating Google Sheet) with details of the emulation system (and version) and host operating system (Linux, Windows, macOS) and version you intend to use to see if you can get specific advice (see also the “[Real vs emulated hardware](#)” earlier in this chapter for some links to guides for emulator-based systems).

Network numbering and zones

As detailed in section “Identifying networks on an internet” in Chapter 4, network numbers defined by Apple Internet Router nodes on an AppleTalk internet must not overlap or conflict with other network numbers or ranges on the AppleTalk internet.

Under the Phase 2 AppleTalk protocols Apple Internet Router uses, a single network number can accommodate 253 connected devices, so it acts much like the “/24” net mask in IP.

Valid network numbers range from 1–65,279.

At 253 devices per network number, that’s 16,515,587 possible GlobalTalk devices!

Most GlobalTalk networks and segments will be much smaller than their theoretical maximum, so it will always be much smaller than that.

LocalTalk vs EtherTalk network numbers

LocalTalk networks, usually connected via the Modem and/or Printer port in older Macs, need to have a unique network number assigned via Apple Internet Router.

EtherTalk networks are assigned a range of network numbers to accommodate the larger number of devices these networks support.

Network ranges

Although Ethernet networks are generally larger than LocalTalk ones, it is unlikely that any single EtherTalk segment on GlobalTalk will exceed 253 devices. In this case, a range of a single number, such as “65279–65279” would be adequate.

More complex configurations, especially those with third party hardware or software AppleTalk router/bridge devices in the mix, or separate Ethernet segments being accessed by a single Apple Internet Router host, will need additional numbers in the range Apple Internet Router is configured with.

Claiming network numbers and ranges on GlobalTalk

It is suggested that in the first instance, absent any complications in configurations and network equipment being likely to be used, a single number range, not currently claimed on the GlobalTalk coordinating Google Sheet, be selected by administrators for their EtherTalk segment.

A unique number (which does not have to be adjacent to the EtherTalk range, but should also not be *inside* that range) will need to be claimed for each LocalTalk segment you are adding to Apple Internet Router.

If you have multiple locations, or a complicated configuration which cannot be expressed as a simple range, multiple lines in the spreadsheet should be created for each location or for each range being claimed (even if a single number range).

This makes it easier for other administrators to understand which numbers and ranges have already been claimed and to avoid conflicts.

When ranges overlap

Across an AppleTalk internet like GlobalTalk, these ranges and network numbers cannot overlap across Apple Internet Router nodes and the networks they route/bridge. If Apple Internet Router nodes see such overlap, they will usually only show the networks connected to the first Apple Internet Router node which it becomes aware of.

AppleTalk zones

AppleTalk networks could be divided into zones, effectively labels for similar types, or locations/departments, of devices.

For example, a large organisation may have had “Marketing”, “Engineering”, “Accounts”, “Manufacturing”, and “Administration” zones established to allow computers in a zone to more easily navigate to peripherals such as printers in their department in the Chooser interface.

Splitting a network in a zone still allows full navigation of all devices visible on the network, but in a categorised fashion to aid quick navigation.

Of course, zones could also designate geographical, or even floor-level, locations, or more abstract designations such as “Printers” if that were deemed suitable by the network administrators.

Zones can cross ports—i.e. a single zone (or multiple zones) can be applied to both the LocalTalk and EtherTalk ports in Apple Internet Router to simplify the logical configuration of the network.

Most GlobalTalk administrators will likely be satisfied with one zone, or perhaps one zone per port, but should keep in mind the possibilities zones allow for easing navigation on more complicated configurations or networks.

CGNAT and Tier 1 VPNs

As discussed above, most internet routers in the 21st Century utilise Network Address Translation (NAT) to share a single external (a.k.a. WAN, wide area network) IP address with multiple devices on the internal network (a.k.a. LAN, local area network) sharing that external IP address.

This external IP address may or may not be “publicly-routable” (i.e. the device can be directly connected to at that address by devices outside the device’s internal network).

However, due to the risks of IPv4 address exhaustion, some carriers/ISPs now utilise “Carrier-Grade NAT” (CGNAT), whereby NAT is extended further out on the ISP’s network, and the external IP address of a local network’s router may no longer be publicly-routable.

If you are able to review your Internet router’s settings, and you can see that the network router’s external IP address is in the range 100.64.0.0–100.127.255.255, your ISP is utilising CGNAT.

If your network router has an external IP address within any of the other reserved private network IP address ranges¹, your ISP is using “plain old NAT”.

Either way, this imposes some limitations on your Apple Internet Router node.

There is not a hard *requirement* for a publicly-routable address in Apple Internet Router to establish outbound connection to other Apple Internet Router nodes.

However, any new nodes, or any restarted nodes, will not be able to communicate with your node until *your* node restarts and re-establishes the link via an outgoing connection.

Robust connections between nodes, independent of any downtime of the nodes involved, requires a publicly-routable IP address and port forwarding (see “[Port forwarding](#)” section below).

Some administrators have utilised Tier 1 VPNs to get around this limitation, but it is beyond the scope of this document to detail how this is achieved.

¹IP address ranges reserved for private use are: 10.0.0.0–10.255.255.255; 172.16.0.0–172.31.255.255; and 192.168.0.0–192.168.255.255

NAT hairpinning

NAT hairpinning (a.k.a. “NAT loopback” or “NAT reflection”) allows devices in a network router’s *internal* network to address the router via its *external* IP address.

This is most useful when wanting to access an internal service (usually via port forwarding) from one device inside the network using the same connection settings as an external device would use.

NAT hairpinning use cases include:

- Setting up a device which may access services from both inside and outside the network (e.g. a laptop which may be used externally to the network).
- To simplify set up instructions or troubleshooting by having all devices internally and externally use the same connection settings

Network router configuration

DHCP and DHCP reservation vs manual address

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is utilised by most network routers to auto-configure devices on its internal network (including the allocation of an IP address).

Most network routers allow DHCP reservations to be configured so that a device always gets the same network configuration. Most DHCP implementations utilise the client device’s Ethernet Media Access Control (MAC, not “Mac”, though it’s pronounced that way) address, which is usually expressed as 6 hexadecimal bytes separated by colons.

Ideally, an IP address for the Apple Internet Router node should be selected from outside the DHCP range, as MacTCP does not support DHCP for automatic configuration.

If that’s not possible, you may still want to configure the network router with a DHCP reservation for the AppleTalk router device’s MAC address to prevent other network devices receiving that address via DHCP.

In either case, you will need to manually configure the IP address in [MacTCP](#) on the Apple Internet Router host.

◆ **Note** When utilising emulated client devices on any modern network it is critical to ensure each emulated device has a unique MAC address defined in the emulated system’s configuration to ensure proper and reliable routing of network packets to all devices, both emulated and real. ◆

It is left to the node administrator to determine the best utilisation of DHCP and manual address assignment.

IP address vs hostname

The Domain Name System (DNS) is the way the underlying numeric IP addresses of devices on a TCP/IP network are mapped to “human friendly” domain names to aid connections. For example, “apple.com” is easier to remember and use/enter than “17.253.144.10”.

DNS also allows the same domain name to be available via different IP addresses over time as infrastructure changes, or even for multiple IP addresses to be allocated to distribute traffic to a single domain name (it is also possible to assign multiple domain names to single IP addresses, which can aid servers to distinguish traffic for different services).

Node administrators may wish to utilise domain names in the GlobalTalk coordinating Google Sheet as they are easier to enter/remember, but other nodes’ addresses are usually only entered once, so for static external IP addresses, this is not necessarily a large benefit.

For nodes where the external address changes, via new DHCP leases, a Dynamic DNS service may be of use.

Dynamic DNS

“Dynamic DNS” services accommodate a local network’s external IP address changes via new DHCP leases, and can also be useful when a node administrator has not registered a personal domain name for their network as they can act as a cheap/free pseudo-registrar for external IP addresses not assigned to a hostname.

A Dynamic DNS setup allows the IP address assigned to a domain name to be updated by a device on the internal network (usually the network router), whenever that device registers a change in the network’s external IP address. While not instantaneous, this usually allows uninterrupted access to the network via the domain name.

Cheap (often free) Dynamic DNS services are available, and many domain registrars now allow dynamic updates of their DNS records via Dynamic DNS as a network router’s external IP addresses change.

Port forwarding

Ports are labels assigned to network packets which allow the efficient routing of different types of network traffic.

Usually indicated as a number after an IP address or domain name and a colon (e.g. “apple.com:443” for HTTPS traffic to the domain name “apple.com”), ports can help network routers to forward packets to the appropriate internal devices via a method unsurprisingly called “port forwarding”.

◆ **Note** Each port can only be forwarded to one internal host—the router has no way of choosing between internal hosts for any given packet to a given port, so should only allow one “port mapping” per port (definition of which host gets which port). ◆

Ports have an associated protocol (such as TCP or UDP)—while beyond the scope of this chapter to describe the differences in detail, these protocols have differing features in relation to, for example, whether traffic is assured of delivery or not (or flagged as timed out if delivery is unsuccessful).

To ensure the reliable connection between Apple Internet Router nodes, each administrator should forward UDP port 387 (officially defined as AURP, the AppleTalk Update-based Routing Protocol) to the internal/local IP address of their Apple Internet Router node. This allows other nodes to establish/re-establish connections when they restart, rather than relying on outbound connections upon local Apple Internet Router node restart only (those outbound connections will only succeed when the node being connected to also has UDP port 387 forwarded in this way).

GlobalTalk software set up

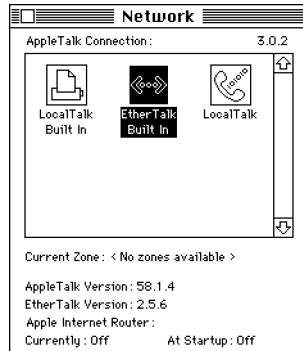
Network services configuration

While not intended to provide all details, the following are the broad brushstrokes steps needed to get a Classic Mac running System 7.1 configured as a basic GlobalTalk node router.

- ◆ **Note** These instructions assume you have:
 - a publicly-routable external IP address
 - your network router configured with UDP port 387 forwarded to your intended Apple Internet Router host's internal IP address
 - no conflict of that IP address with any other devices on the local network
 - a Classic Macintosh, real or virtual, running System 7.1 and connected to an Ethernet network (LocalTalk is optional)
 - Apple Internet Router installed (see section “Installing the router on a startup disk” of Chapter 2)
 - The Apple Internet Router AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension installed
 - MacTCP Ping installed

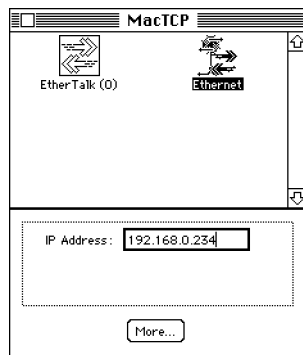
All the necessary software installers are located in the GlobalTalk Installers folder in the “Sys7.1-GlobalTalk_Install.img” disk image and the “GlobalTalk HD.img” has all the necessary components pre-installed—these disk image are part of [@europlus](#)' GlobalTalk Setup Files. ◆

- 1 Start your Apple Internet Router Macintosh and open the Network control panel and make sure EtherTalk is selected.



◆ **Note** If you are using an expansion card or BlueSCSI, you will need to make sure you choose the Ethernet port which represents that device. ◆

- 2 Open the MacTCP control panel.
- 3 Select Ethernet as the port, then enter the IP address you wish to use for the Apple Internet Router Macintosh .



- 4 Click More....
- 5 Select Manually as the Obtain Address method.
- 6 Enter your network router's internal IP address as the Gateway Address.
- 7 Do not worry about the settings for network classes or subnets.

- 8 Enter a full stop (a.k.a. dot, period, CHR\$(46), ASCII 0x2E) in the Domain Name Server Information first line's Domain field, then enter you primary DNS server's IP address in that same line's IP Address and select Default on that line.

The screenshot shows the MacTCP control panel with the following settings:

- Obtain Address:** Manually (selected), Server, Dynamically.
- Routing Information:** Gateway Address: 192.168.0.1.
- IP Address:** Class: C, Address: 192.168.0.234, Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0.
- Domain Name Server Information:** A table with columns Domain, IP Address, and Default. The first row has a period in the Domain field, 192.168.0.1 in the IP Address field, and the Default radio button selected.

◆ **Note** You can enter additional DNS servers, but anything which is a DNS server for a search domain should have the search domain terminated by a full stop in the Domain field. For most scenarios a single DNS server's IP address (usually the network router's internal IP address) is sufficient if configured in this way. ◆

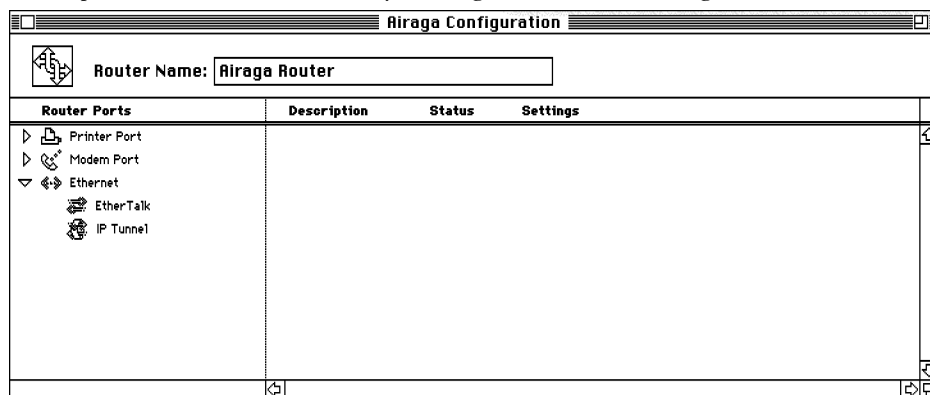
- 9 Click OK (or press Enter) then close the MacTCP control panel. It is best to restart your Apple Internet Router Macintosh at this point.
- 10 Open MacTCP Ping and attempt to ping your network router's internal IP address ("192.168.0.1" in the graphics shown), then some external addresses (e.g. an external DNS server). You should be able to ping both IP addresses and hostnames. If successful, you're now ready to move onto configuring the Apple Internet Router components.

The screenshot shows the MacTCP Ping Information window with the following settings and results:

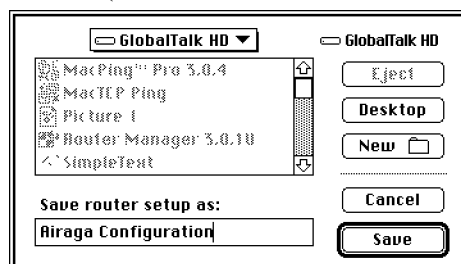
- Ping Host Address:** 192.168.0.1
- Send:** ASCII data
- Packet Data Size:** 56 bytes, Send: 1 packets
- Send a packet every:** 60 ticks, Send continuously (unselected)
- Display:** All Data (selected), Summary Data (unselected)
- Results:**
 - Packets out/in/bad/loss = 1/1/0/0
 - Round Trip Time (Ticks) min/avg/max = 1/1/1
 - Source: [192.168.0.234] --> Destination: [192.168.0.1]
 - Table with columns: RESULT, PKT#, TIME, LENGTH. Row 1: success, 1, 0, 56.
 - Packets out/in/bad/loss = 1/1/0/0
 - Round Trip Time (Ticks) min/avg/max = 0/0/0

Apple Internet Router setup—a walkthrough

- 1 Open Router Manager and widen the Configuration window, enter a name for your router, and expand the Ethernet section by clicking the disclosure triangle:



- 2 Choose Save from the File menu, then give your configuration file a name, and choose a location (in the same folder as Router Manager is probably best):



- 3 Double click on the “EtherTalk” item under “Ethernet”, set the “Port:” radio button to “Seed”, enter the single number network range you selected and entered on the coordination Google Sheet in the two “Network Range:” fields, enter your chosen EtherTalk zone name in the “Zone Name:” field and click Add—your Port Info window should now look something like this:

Click Define (or press Return or Enter).

◆ **Note** “Seed” is the setting which makes the router software define itself as the controller of the AppleTalk network for this segment—only one seed router can be present on any single segment. If the router is going to be routing for any LocalTalk (or other) segments, it should have “Seed” selected for those ports, too. Nonseed routers get their configuration from seed routers, and would generally be on a more complex network configuration beyond the scope of the chapter to discuss. If unsure, selecting “Seed” is the safe option. ◆

◆ **Note** A zone name is not restricted to one port or segment. while devices may be separated across networks or ports on an individual Apple Internet Router, **all** devices on the same zone, no matter which segment they are connected to, will appear together in the Chooser. ◆

4 Your Configuration window should now look something like this:

The screenshot shows the "Airaga Configuration" window. At the top, there is a field for "Router Name:" with the value "Airaga Router". Below this is a table with columns "Router Ports", "Description", "Status", and "Settings".

Router Ports	Description	Status	Settings
Printer Port			
Modem Port			
Ethernet	Ethernet	Active	Net: 1968-1968, Zone: Airaga
EtherTalk			
IP Tunnel			

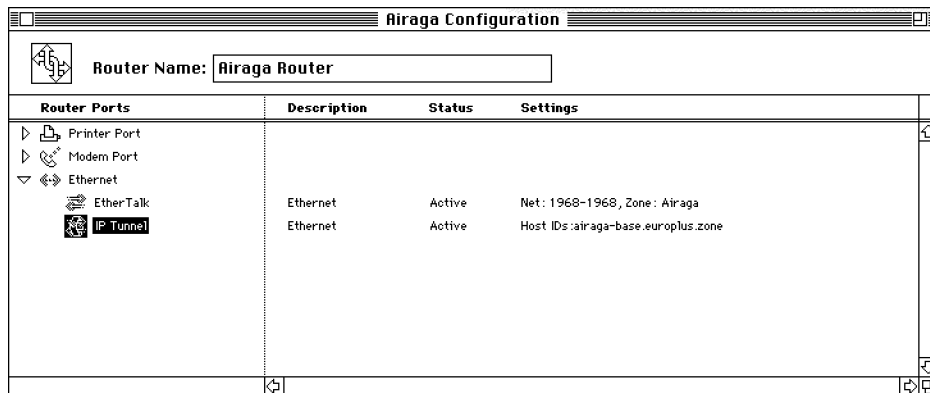
5 Double-click the "IP Tunnel" listing under "Ethernet", uncheck the "Use only the host IDs listed" checkbox, enter a "Host ID:" of "airaga-base.europlus.zone" and click "Add"—your Port Info window should now look something like this:

The screenshot shows the "Airaga Configuration Port Info" window. It has several fields and buttons:

- Physical Port:** Ethernet
- Access Method:** IP Tunnel
- Port Description:** Ethernet
- Port Status:** ☒ Active ☐ Inactive
- Buttons:** Define, Cancel, Options...
- Host List:** A list box containing "airaga-base.europlus.zone". To the right of the list box are "Remove" and "Rename" buttons.
- Host ID:** A text field containing "airaga-base.europlus.zone". To its right is an "Add" button.
- Checkbox:** ☐ Use only the host IDs listed

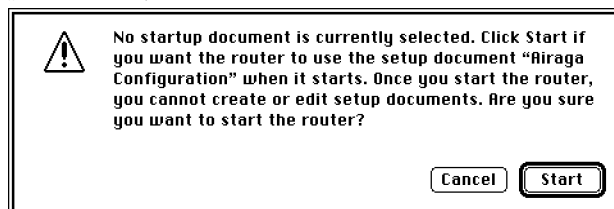
Click Define (or press Return or Enter), then Save (⌘-S).

- 6 Your Configuration window should now look something like this:

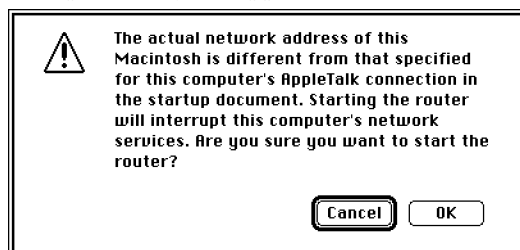


- 7 You're now ready to test your setup! Choose "Start Router..." from the Control menu. If you're using the [@europius](#)-supplied disk images (see "QEMU" section in this chapter), -U will start and stop the router.

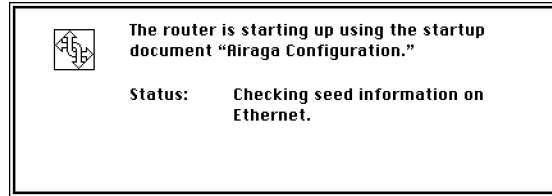
- 8 You will see a message about no startup document being selected—just click Start (or press Return).



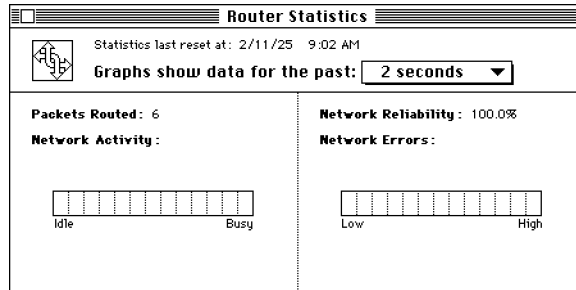
- 9 If your computer had a network number automatically assigned by the AppleTalk subsystem, you may see a message about the actual network address being different to that specified by the AppleTalk connection—just click OK.



- 10 The router should then cycle through several messages while it configures system components and connects to the network.



- 11 If you successfully connect to the airaga-base node, you will see a Router Statistics window appear, and the Network Information will show two networks, one of them being the Airaga zone on network number 19680—this means you have successfully connected to the airaga-base node!



Network Information

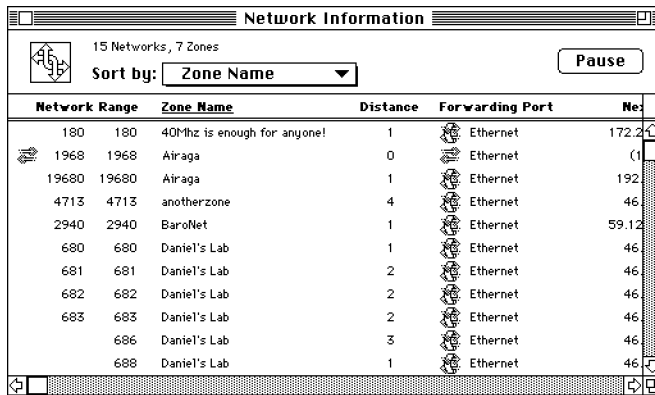
2 Networks, 1 Zone

Sort by: Zone Name

Pause

Network Range	Zone Name	Distance	Forwarding Port	Net
1968 1968	Airaga	0	Ethernet	(1)
19680 19680	Airaga	1	Ethernet	192

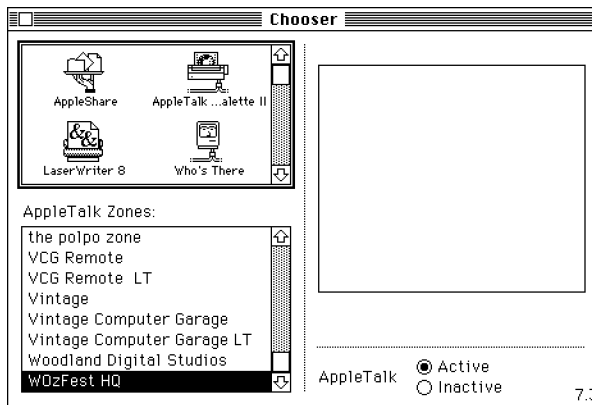
- 12 If you see other networks appear, they are being routed via the airaga-base node from other nodes which have connected to airaga-base.



The screenshot shows the 'Network Information' window with a title bar and standard Mac OS window controls. Below the title bar, it says '15 Networks, 7 Zones'. There is a 'Sort by:' dropdown menu set to 'Zone Name' and a 'Pause' button. The main content is a table with columns: Network Range, Zone Name, Distance, Forwarding Port, and Ne. The table lists various networks and their associated zones, including 'Airaga', 'anotherzone', 'BaroNet', and 'Daniel's Lab'. Each entry shows a network range, the zone name, a distance value, a forwarding port (all 'Ethernet'), and a network number.

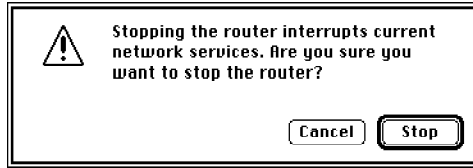
Network Range	Zone Name	Distance	Forwarding Port	Ne
180 180	40Mhz is enough for anyone!	1	Ethernet	172.2
1968 1968	Airaga	0	Ethernet	(1)
19680 19680	Airaga	1	Ethernet	192
4713 4713	anotherzone	4	Ethernet	46
2940 2940	BaroNet	1	Ethernet	59.12
680 680	Daniel's Lab	1	Ethernet	46
681 681	Daniel's Lab	2	Ethernet	46
682 682	Daniel's Lab	2	Ethernet	46
683 683	Daniel's Lab	2	Ethernet	46
686 686	Daniel's Lab	3	Ethernet	46
688 688	Daniel's Lab	1	Ethernet	46

- 13 You should see the zone-aware Chooser window now, with the small pane at bottom left to choose a zone from. If only the airaga-base node has connected, you will only see your own zone and the “Airaga” zone. Feel free to explore the Airaga zone.



◆ **Tip** Remove any Chooser extensions you don't need from the Extensions folder in the System folder to reduce the need to scroll down the list of Chooser extension. For example, if LaserWriter 8 is installed, remove LaserWriter, and if using the MacPalette driver, remove the AppleTalk ImageWriter extension. ◆

- 14 When you need to change the configuration, you'll need to stop your router before any changes are possible. Choose “Stop Router...” from the Control menu (⌘-U), and confirm the stopping of the router.



- 15 You're now ready to add further Host IDs from the coordination Google Sheet—repeat the addition as shown in Step 5 with the hosts from the Sheet, or use [AirConfig](#) (with [GlobalTalk Updater](#)) to speed this process up and avoid transcription errors.
- 16 Start the router again and confirm you see more nodes—you're now ready to explore the wider GlobalTalk internet!

GlobalTalk troubleshooting basics

A comprehensive troubleshooting guide is beyond the scope of this chapter, especially due to the complex differences between running on real vs emulated hardware. Here are general notes to point GlobalTalk administrators in the right direction, or provide test data which will help to solve the problem in consultation with other GlobalTalk administrators.

When referenced, tools are cross-linked to their entry later in the “[Useful utilities and resources](#)” section in this chapter.

TCP, UDP and IP issues

Given the GlobalTalk network is made up of nodes connected via the IP Tunnel component of Apple Internet Router, getting these network protocols right is critical.

Some things to check are:

- Make sure you have correctly set up the details in MacTCP—this can be checked by using [MacTCP Ping](#) to ping your router, the IP address of an external server (such as Google’s DNS server at “8.8.8.8”, and external addresses at their domain name (for example, “www.apple.com”).
- Use a program such as Fetch (FTP client) to check that connections to external resources can be established and utilised by the AppleTalk router Macintosh.
- Use a program such as MacHTTP (HTTP server) installed on the AppleTalk router Macintosh to check that incoming connections can be established to the AppleTalk router Macintosh (be sure to forward port 80 to that Macintosh as needed).

◆ **Note** Fetch and MacHTTP are available on the “Sys7.1-GlobalTalk_Install.img” disk image, part of [@europlus’ GlobalTalk Setup Files](#). ◆

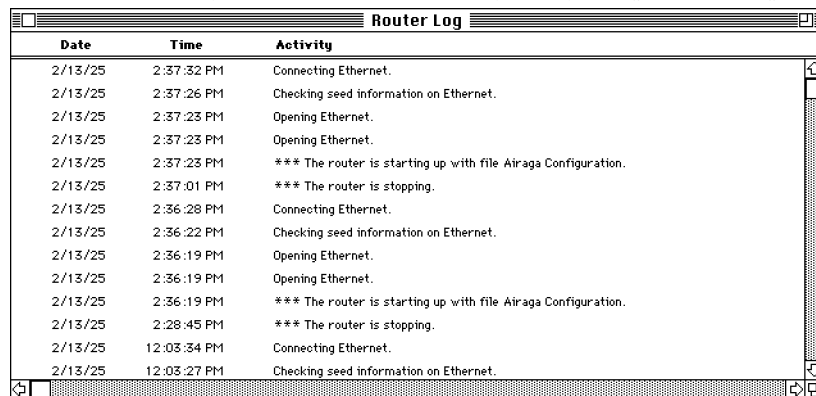
- Check that your network router correctly forwards UDP port 387 to your Apple Internet Router machine—if you see other routers when you start Apple Internet Router, but other administrators advise you they can’t see your AppleTalk router when they restart theirs, incorrect port forwarding settings are most likely to blame.
- If you are using emulated hardware, testing TCP, UDP and IP issues becomes significantly more challenging. With the extra layer of abstraction, there are numerous ways the required settings can be slightly misconfigured and stop the whole system from working. Being prepared to spend significant time with frustrating troubleshooting is essential. If following guides, double and triple check the instructions have been followed correctly.

AppleTalk issues

The most common AppleTalk issue will be conflicting network numbers or ranges. Double check the coordinating Google Sheet, and try a different number or range in case the conflicting range is not documented.

Reference should be made to Chapter 10, Troubleshooting, which includes potential causes for many error messages or problems when running Apple Internet Router.

The Router Log available in Router Manager may also point to the problem:



Router Log		
Date	Time	Activity
2/13/25	2:37:32 PM	Connecting Ethernet.
2/13/25	2:37:26 PM	Checking seed information on Ethernet.
2/13/25	2:37:23 PM	Opening Ethernet.
2/13/25	2:37:23 PM	Opening Ethernet.
2/13/25	2:37:23 PM	*** The router is starting up with file Airaga Configuration.
2/13/25	2:37:01 PM	*** The router is stopping.
2/13/25	2:36:28 PM	Connecting Ethernet.
2/13/25	2:36:22 PM	Checking seed information on Ethernet.
2/13/25	2:36:19 PM	Opening Ethernet.
2/13/25	2:36:19 PM	Opening Ethernet.
2/13/25	2:36:19 PM	*** The router is starting up with file Airaga Configuration.
2/13/25	2:28:45 PM	*** The router is stopping.
2/13/25	12:03:34 PM	Connecting Ethernet.
2/13/25	12:03:27 PM	Checking seed information on Ethernet.

◆ **Note** [MacPing Pro](#) can help with exploring and troubleshooting AppleTalk networks, as can just exploring zones and devices via the Chooser (especially with [Who's There](#) installed). [Trawl](#) can also aid in visualising the GlobalTalk internet. ◆

System issues

There are numerous possible causes of System-level issues, but the following general recommendations will at least reduce potential conflicts and reduce startup times, thereby making troubleshooting a more straightforward exercise:

- Reduce the number of Extensions (including Chooser extensions) and Control Panels to only those needed to run Apple Internet Router. For example, the base System 7.1 install will have an “Apple CD Speed Switch” control panel, and Chooser extensions such as “Personal LaserWriter SC”, which will almost certainly not be needed.
- Check the amount of free RAM on startup to ensure the Macintosh is not low on RAM.
- Change the display settings in the Monitors control panel—setting to Black and White will reduce load on your machine, especially if emulated.

Backing up

Now is a good time to consider backing up your configuration—whether by shutting down an emulated machine and making copies of the image file of the Apple Internet Router node boot disk, or by copying the boot disk's setup files over the network, or using contemporaneous backup solutions or compression programs.

Additionally, consideration should be given to any other relevant files you may wish to backup, such as emulation host system configuration files, and file share contents.

Periodic backing up of files will ensure recovery from any disaster has limited impact.

GlobalTalk network services

Any AppleTalk-compatible services are able to be run on the GlobalTalk network, and AppleTalk-capable clients will be able to see them as valid network devices, usually by navigating zones for each network type.

Selecting a server will depend on the service—some, such as file sharing, are selected in the Chooser via Chooser extensions. Others are selected within a client application.

Here we will look at some of the most common services, and mention a few of the less common ones you may encounter when navigating the GlobalTalk network.

File sharing

Many GlobalTalk node administrators have made available files they think others might be interested in via file sharing servers.

Additionally, “drop boxes” have also been created—these are like a “visitor’s book”, where files such as postcards, messages, or other mementos, can be left. There are many creative files which were left in drop boxes during MARCHintosh 2024 celebrating that event and the establishment of the GlobalTalk network.

While it is beyond the scope of this chapter to detail how to set up file sharing services, below are the most common server types on GlobalTalk.

AppleShare

Perhaps the simplest file share server to setup, AppleShare is built-in to the Mac OS versions which run and access GlobalTalk.

Netatalk

Netatalk is free and open source software which runs on many OSes and provides access to Apple-centric file and print sharing services.

Netatalk 4’s release in late 2024 saw the return of native AppleTalk support to the package, which was not present in v3.

Netatalk is the most common way to provide AppleShare services from Linux operating systems.

Other file servers

Other AppleTalk-compatible file sharing solutions have also been on GlobalTalk—in fact, a Windows NT file server with the appropriate AppleTalk-related extensions appeared on GlobalTalk during MARCHintosh 2024.

Users and permissions

Usually, visitors connect as the “Guest” user with no password and have read-only access to the files the administrator wishes to share, and read/write (or perhaps write-only) access to drop boxes.

Printing

One of the features of AppleTalk was easy print sharing, and this flows through to GlobalTalk.

There are a plethora of printers on GlobalTalk, including original, modern and virtual printers. They come in several flavours, but the most common ones are described here.

LocalTalk printers

Many inkjet and dot matrix printers were either AppleTalk compatible or able to be made so with LocalTalk adaptors.

◆ **Note** There are software solutions to bridge serial printers to LocalTalk via the Macintosh they are connected to. Look for Printer Share, GrayShare and ColorShare—additionally, the driver for the LaserWriter 300 series printer had the same capability. ◆

Administrators around the world have made black and white and colour printers available for other GlobalTalk users to print to.

MacPalette II driver

For ImageWriter II printers with colour ribbons, the MacPalette II driver gives superior results to Apple’s own drivers.

Laser printers and PPDs

Many laser printers have been able to be connected to LocalTalk or EtherTalk networks, and there are many laser printers available to print to on GlobalTalk. Some are modern colour printers.

Best results are achieved with Postscript-capable printers in conjunction with the LaserWriter and LaserWriter 8 printer drivers, and, if available, use the PPDs (Postscript Printer Description files) some administrators have been able to supply for their printers, which allow printer-specific options (such as duplex [double-sided] printing).

Printing to PDF

Some administrators have set up “Print to PDF” printers, which output directly to PDF files, which are often then available to download. This allows vintage software to output to PDF for viewing on modern OSes.

Most often, these printers are available in the LaserWriter and LaserWriter 8 printer drivers shown in the Chooser.

CUPS and Netatalk

Many of the available modern and virtual printers on GlobalTalk are set up via the Common Unix Printing System (CUPS) and Netatalk. Some of the modern printers include peculiar devices such as thermal receipt printers—usually these are connected via CUPS and Netatalk, and perhaps some bespoke scripting components.

Set up is reasonably complex, but the fact modern printers and file output can be provided to vintage systems can make it well worth the effort.

◆ **Note** Please keep in mind many of these printers are old, and even if dot matrix ribbons and inkjet cartridges are new-old-stock (NOS) or newly manufactured equivalents, they are often not cheap to replace. Please be considerate when printing to any kind of printer and keep it to a small number of pages (perhaps one, at least without checking with the node administrator first). ◆

Other services

Gaming

AppleTalk-aware games are able to be played over GlobalTalk—keep in mind the latency of gaming over the internet. Bolo and Spectre servers have been set up, and it’s hoped that more games will be played over the worldwide network in coming MARCHintoshes.

PowerTalk and AppleMail

System 7.1.1 (a.k.a. System 7.1 Pro) included PowerTalk, a collaborative technology system which included AppleMail, a basic mail system for AppleTalk networks. AppleMail features stationery/templates for messages, and addressing is very simple, with auto-discovery of servers and accounts.

◆ **Note** A System 7.1.1 installer is on the “Sys7.1 + GlobalTalk Installers” drive image which is part of [@europlus’ GlobalTalk Setup Files](#) archive. ◆

If you install System 7.1 Pro, look around for other AppleMail servers and drop the administrator there a short note.

AppleMail was short-lived, but PowerTalk in System 7.1 Pro saw the first appearance of keychain technology in Mac OS (called the PowerTalk Key Chain). The keychain concept remains in Apple OSes this day, still available in macOS Sequoia under that name, but also in a more user friendly interface through the newly released Passwords app available in macOS, and iOS/iPadOS.

BBSes, forums and chat

Relatively under-utilised, more social communication services during MARCHintosh 2024 were limited primarily to a bespoke HyperCard stack by [@kalleboo](#) called GlobalTalk Chat, which allowed chat sessions between users across GlobalTalk ([@kalleboo](#) also released a Zone Watcher stack, a Hypercard “web” style stack in which pages could be created, and Apple Internet RouterConfig (see below).

EZChat is a multi-zone aware chat program and server developed in the 1990’s for System 6 and 7 Macintoshes.

In early 2025, a TeleFinder BBS system was put on GlobalTalk, and it’s hoped more such BBS/discussion forum servers will appear on GlobalTalk over time to facilitate communication on the network.

Network backups

A Retrospect network backup server surfaced during MARCHintosh 2024. Retrospect was a major player in Mac OS backup in the 1990s, and its network backup capabilities were critical to protecting many networks. With scheduled and rolling backups, its capabilities were extensive, and well worth a play with to see how backup was done before Time Machine.

MacIP Gateway

The MacIP Gateway service which is part of Netatalk allows AppleTalk-connected computers to access the Internet (or TCP/IP services generally) routed through the AppleTalk network.

This allows older Macs without Ethernet ports to access internet services such as web, FTP and gopher sites.

Useful utilities and resources

There are, of course, numerous utilities and apps which make using Classic Mac OS more enjoyable, but those listed below have particular uses on Apple Internet Router nodes and AppleTalk clients.

Most will run on older Mac OSes except where noted.

◆ **Note** While a location on the GlobalTalk network is often provided here, the programs which run under the Classic Mac OS (indicated with a small Apple logo—) are located in the Apps folder in the “Sys7.1-GlobalTalk_Install.img” disk image—this disk image is part of [@europlus’ GlobalTalk Setup Files](#). ◆

◆ **Note** The afp:/ URLs used below follow this format, most often used in Mac OS X:
afp:/at/ServerName:Zone/Share/Path/
Some clients will not navigate past the Share component of such URLs. ◆

Router Manager 3.0.1W

A modified version of the Router Manager application, which has additional key commands:

Command	Shortcut
Start Router...	⌘-U
Stop Router...	⌘-U
Set Startup...	⌘-B
Reset Statistics...	⌘-R
Network Information	⌘-F
Router Statistics	⌘-T
Router Log	⌘-L

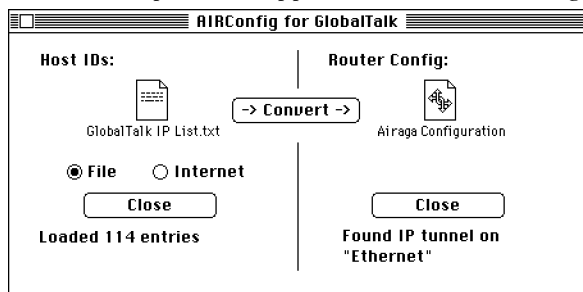
Control
Start Router... ⌘U
Set Startup... ⌘B
Reset Statistics... ⌘R
Set Password...
Remove Password

Windows
Network Information ⌘F
✓ Router Statistics ⌘T
Port Statistics
Router Log ⌘L
Airaga Configuration

afp:/at/AIR Admin’s Guide Server:Airaga/AIR Administrator’s Guide f

AIRConfig

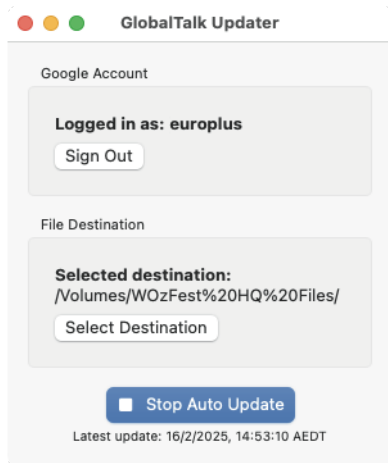
This utility simplifies configuring the nodes within Router Manager by using a text file of Host IDs to update the Apple Internet Router settings file.



```
afp:/at/Blackbird:BaroNet/Blackbird Public/#MARCHintosh #GlobalTalk stuff
```

GlobalTalk Updater

This utility for modern macOS creates a text file of Host IDs by downloading a list of Host IDs from the coordinating Google Sheet (and can do so periodically). Use in conjunction with AIRConfig and save the text file where AIRConfig can see it.



```
https://github.com/dremin/globaltalk-updater
```

◆ **Note** To gain access to the coordinating Google Sheet, GlobalTalk Updater requires you to authenticate to your Google Account. ◆

◆ **Note** GlobalTalk Update resolves hostnames in the coordinating Google Sheet to avoid MacTCP v1's CNAME resolution limit—to ensure the most up-to-date information, utilise the auto-update feature. ◆

Pre-prepared Host ID files for AIRConfig

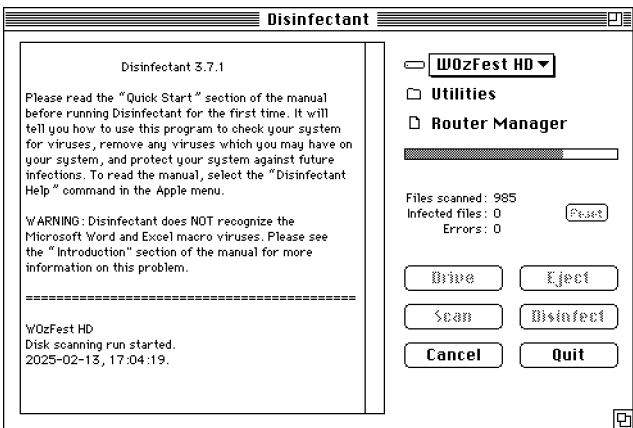
Some GlobalTalk admins Host ID files for use in AIRConfig by other admins, for example:

`afp:/at/MacServ:Daniel's Lab/Public/NOC/`

`afp:/at/Pluto:Purrtopia/Files/`

Disinfectant[🍏]

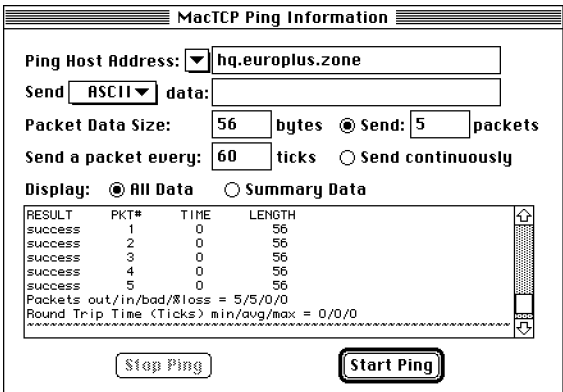
The venerable virus checker and cleaner for Classic Macs. Includes an INIT/extension to protect a System “on the fly”.



`afp:/at/AIR Admin's Guide Server:Airaga/AIR Administrator's Guide f`

MacTCP Ping[🍏]

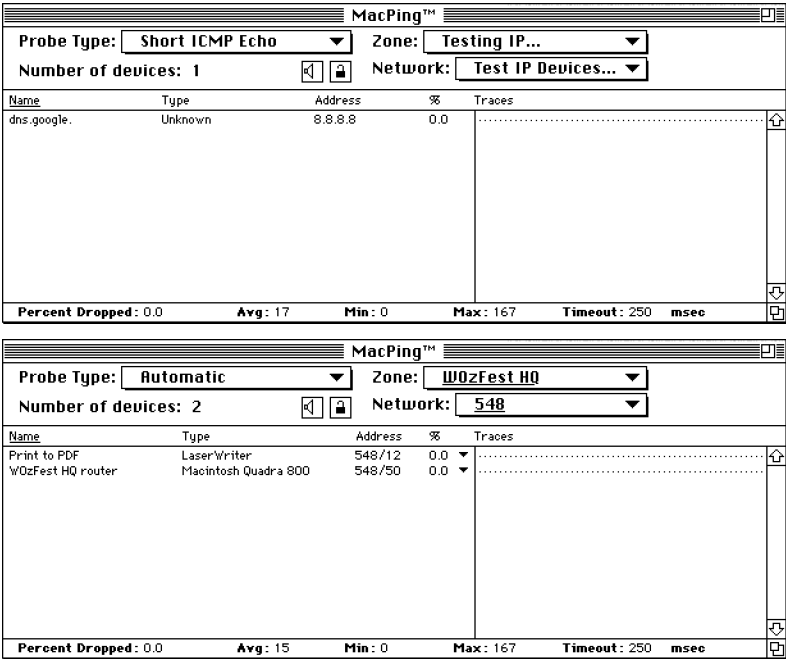
MacTCP Ping is useful for troubleshooting your network router's internal and external networks, including for testing against the addresses in the coordinating Google Sheet to see if your Apple Internet Router host is having trouble seeing other nodes at the IP level.



`afp:/at/AIR Admin's Guide Server:Airaga/AIR Administrator's Guide f`

MacPing Pro

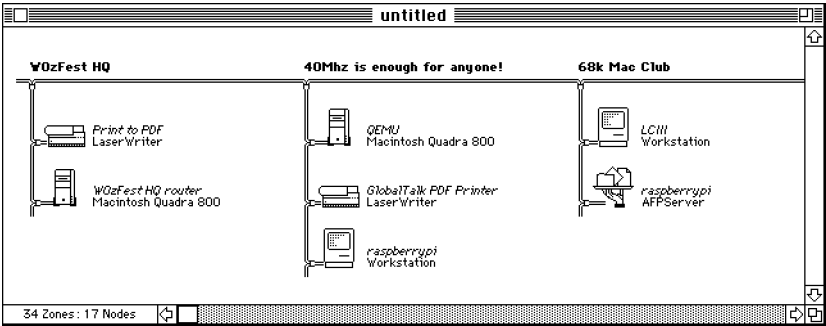
Another useful IP ping utility, MacPing Pro also allows pinging AppleTalk devices on an AppleTalk network/internet.



afp:/at/AIR Admin's Guide Server:Airaga/AIR Administrator's Guide f

Trawl

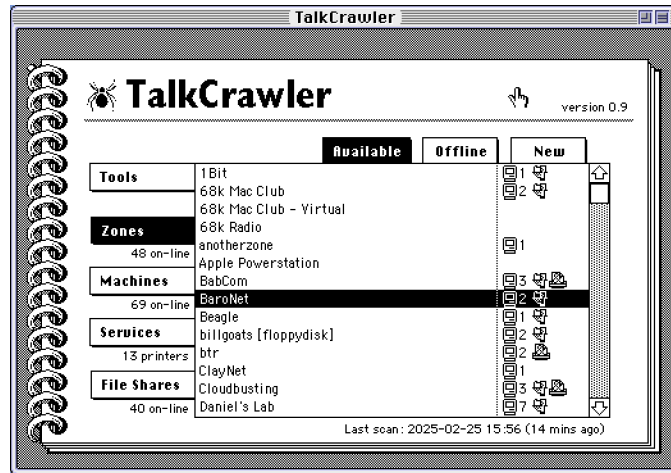
A graphical network discovery tool which displays network diagrams of AppleTalk networks and segments.



afp:/at/AIR Admin's Guide Server:Airaga/AIR Administrator's Guide f

TalkCrawler

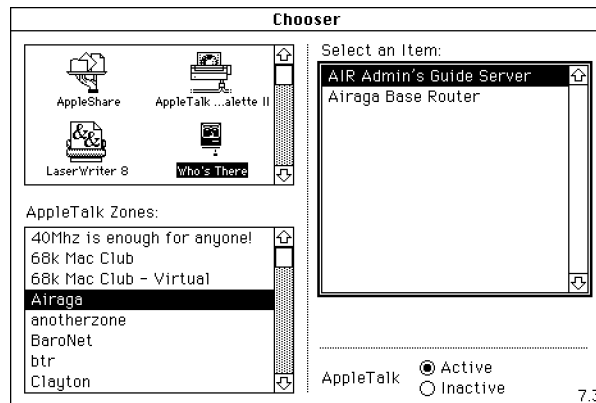
In the lead up to MARCHintosh 2025 [@kalleboo](#) has been developing TalkCrawler, an all-new HyperCard-based tool to crawl the entirety of the GlobalTalk internet in order to keep tabs on all the new zones and machines which have shown up—even while you're asleep! A must-have tool for MARCHintosh 2025—and many more in the future!



afp:/at/Blackbird:BaroNet/Blackbird Public/#MARCHintosh #GlobalTalk stuff

Who's There

An exceedingly useful Chooser extension which displays all devices registered in a zone, as well as some pertinent information about the selected device.



AIR Admin's Guide Server :AFPServer @Airaga On Network:
19680(0x4CE0) Node: 50(0x32) Socket: 250 (0xFA)

Copyright © 1990 Kevin W. Ramer

afp:/at/AIR Admin's Guide Server:Airaga/AIR Administrator's Guide f

Inter•Poll Admin

A network discovery tool which displays network information for AppleTalk networks and internets. Includes MacDraw-compatible PICT files with node icons and office layout grids.

Network Search

Select Zone(s):

Vintage

Vintage Computer Garage

Vintage Computer Garage LT

Woodland Digital Studios

W0zFest HQ

Total Zones: 34

Search Time:

1

Min

30

Sec

☐ Continuous

Select Sorting:

Net

☒ Ascending

☐ Descending

☒ All Named Devices

☐ Devices Matching:

Match: Net

With:

Add

Clear

Clear All

☐ Exact Match

☒ Partial Match

Search Criteria:

Searching for All Devices

in Zone: W0zFest HQ

Cancel

Start

Device List

Status:

Clear

Stop

Searching for All Devices

Search Time: 1 Min 30 Sec

Search Time (%)

0

50

100

Zone: W0zFest HQ

Total Entries: 14

Net	Node	Name	Type	Zone
548	12	server	ProDOS 16 Image	W0zFest HQ
548	12	server	Apple //gs	W0zFest HQ
548	12	server	Apple //e Boot	W0zFest HQ
548	12	server	Workstation	W0zFest HQ
548	12	server	netatalk	W0zFest HQ
548	12	Brother From Another...	LaserWriter	W0zFest HQ
548	12	Print to PDF	LaserWriter	W0zFest HQ
548	12	server	TimeLord	W0zFest HQ
548	12	W0zFest HQ Server	AFPServer	W0zFest HQ
548	50	W0zFest HQ router	Workstation	W0zFest HQ
548	50	W0zFest HQ router	SNMP Agent	W0zFest HQ
548	50	W0zFest HQ router	MsgReceiver	W0zFest HQ
548	50	W0zFest HQ router	Macintosh Quadra 8...	W0zFest HQ
548	50	W0zFest HQ	AppleRouter	W0zFest HQ

Device: Net: 548 Node: 12

Brother From Another Router - LaserWriter - W0zFest HQ

Stop

Packets: 20

Using:

☐ Echo Pkts

☒ Printer Status Packets

☐ System Info Packets

Interval: 2.5 Secs

Timeout: 1.5 Secs

Packets Sent: Rcvd: 25 Left: 13 Lost: 0 Total: 25

	Current	Average	Minimum	Maximum
Hops Away	0	0.00	0	0
Delay (secs)	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Clear

Status: status: idle; info: "Brother" is ready ;

afp://at/AIR Admin's Guide Server:Airaga/AIR Administrator's Guide f

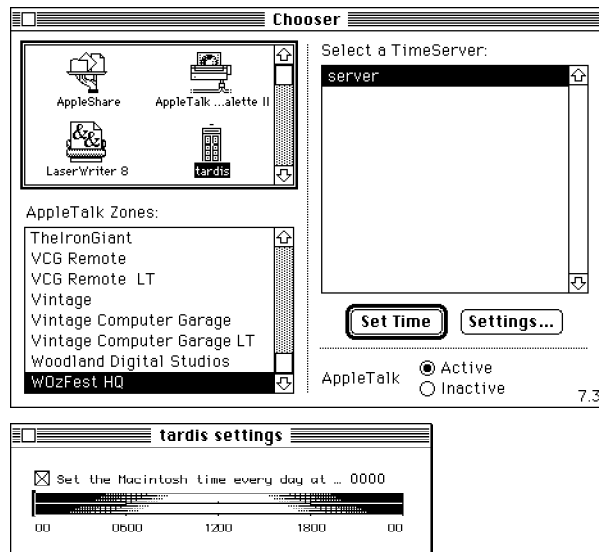
Choosier[🍏]

If you can get it running (I couldn't, hence no screenshot), Choosier is a Classic Mac OS replacement for Apple's own Chooser, with a raft of improvements over the default app to make network device discovery easier.

`afp:/at/AIR Admin's Guide Server:Airaga/AIR Administrator's Guide f`

timelord/tardis[🍏]

The timelord time synchronisation package allows your AppleTalk-connected Classic Macintoshes to synchronise their time from an AppleTalk Classic Mac timelord server via the tardis Chooser extension.



Additionally, Netatalk has a timelord server, allowing the tardis client machine to be updated via the standard Network Time Protocol (NTP).

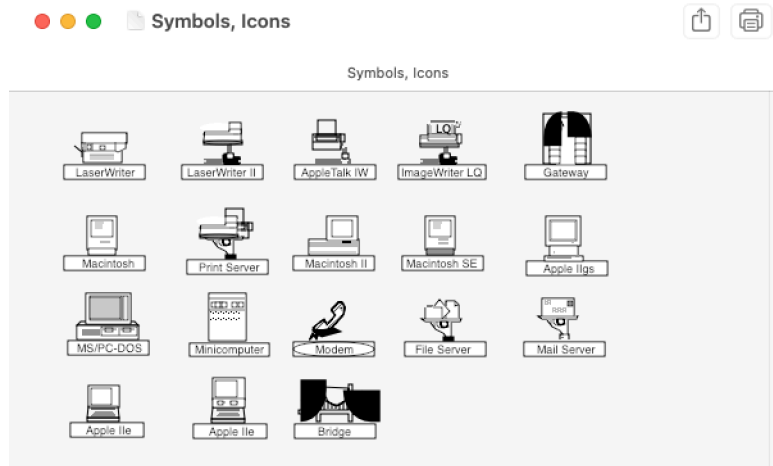
Clock drift is certainly not uncommon on some emulated systems, so this can help to periodically correct the emulated system's time.

◆ **Tip** Rename “tardis” to “zardis” so it is the last Chooser extension shown—it is rarely used, works with the changed name, and allows more regularly-used Chooser extensions, such as Who's There, to appear higher on the small Chooser extensions pane. ◆

`afp:/at/AIR Admin's Guide Server:Airaga/AIR Administrator's Guide f`

QuickDraw Viewer

A utility for modern macOS for viewing QuickDraw files, such as PICT files (including screenshots) from Classic Mac OS.



<https://github.com/wiesmann/QuickDrawViewer>

Mac OS X/Netatalk command line AppleTalk utilities

atlookup (Mac OS X)

On the command line, `atlookup` allows Mac OS X (v10.4 and below) to perform lookups on the AppleTalk network, including on AppleTalk internets like GlobalTalk. By default, `atlookup` lists all devices in the current zone. An example to look for all devices in the “Airaga” zone would be:

```
atlookup =:@'Airaga'
```

where the “=” acts as a wildcard.

To get the list of visible zones on the AppleTalk network/internet, use the “-z” switch:

```
atlookup -z
```

nbplkup and getzones (Netatalk)

On systems with Netatalk installed, nbplkup (AppleTalk Name Binding Protocol Lookup) performs a similar task to atlookup in older Mac OS X versions. An equivalent of the above atlookup command in Netatalk would be:

```
nbplkup '@Airaga'
```

To get the list of visible zones on the AppleTalk network/internet, use the getzones command.

Experimentation on the command line

As with all command line tools, the above can be combined with other command line tools to create complex composite commands. For example, in March 2024 [@paulrickards](#) posted this composite command for Netatalk 2 on [Mastodon](#):

```
getzones | while read line ; do echo "$line zone:" ; nbplkup "@$line" ;done
```

Which will trawl all visible zones on an AppleTalk network/internet (including the GlobalTalk network) and list all visible devices in each zone.

It's left as an exercise for the reader to remove the additional output which appears in Netatalk 4.

Mind the (AIR) gap—other AppleTalk bridges and routers

Apple Internet Router is not the only kid on the block when it comes to AppleTalk routers. Other solutions existed contemporaneously in hardware and software, and there continues to be development of new applications and devices to undertake some or all of Apple Internet Router's roles. We look at some here . . . and look forward to others being developed in the future.

Solutions contemporaneous with Apple Internet Router

LocalTalk Bridge

Apple released LocalTalk Bridge as a way to use a computer which could connect to LocalTalk and, say, EtherTalk to bridge between the two networks so devices could access those on the other connection.

Most useful on real hardware, its functionality is likely superseded for most, if not all, GlobalTalk admins with Apple Internet Router itself.

While similarly named and sharing much of the same GUI (and presumably underlying code), LaserWriter Bridge allows only a single LocalTalk Apple LaserWriter to be shared to the other network/s the Macintosh is connected to.

GatorBox

The GatorBox was a hardware solution by Cayman Systems which combined several AppleTalk-related features.

It was able to bridge between LocalTalk and EtherTalk networks, it could seed networks with network number and zone information, it could provide AppleTalk access to Unix line printers (lpr) it was connected to, and it could perform TCP/IP bridging to LocalTalk devices (similar to MacIP Gateway, part of Netatalk) so they could access TCP/IP services without an Ethernet connection.

Cisco

AppleTalk is supported on Cisco IOS 12.1 and earlier. By IOS 12.2 Cisco started deprecating AppleTalk features. It was completely removed in the 15.0(S)M release. An older Cisco router can be used to route and manage AppleTalk EtherTalk (LocalTalk is not supported). Cisco IOS can handle a few other routing protocols as well such as GRE (Generic Routing Encapsulation) for tunnelling AppleTalk across the Internet.¹

¹Text supplied by [@danielrufvesson](#).

Modern solutions

These products are modern developments which can help in connecting old and modern AppleTalk devices to each other, in some cases including emulated Macintoshes.

While beyond the scope of this chapter to detail configuration, etc., some basic details and links to product websites may help GlobalTalk node admins determine if these products will be useful in their setup.

jrouter

A modern replacement for Apple Internet Router written in Go—a work in progress at the time of writing, it is an ongoing MARCHintosh project of [@DrJosh9000](#).

Running [jrouter](#) allows a modern computer to perform the routing functionality without the real or emulated Classic Mac OS device Apple Internet Router requires.

TashTalk

[TashTalk](#) is a hardware device which converts LocalTalk traffic received through a LocalTalk dongle (including PhoneNet) into UDP traffic using the LTtoUDP translation, which allows modern LTtoUDP-aware software (e.g. Mini vMac) and hardware to be bridged to LocalTalk devices directly.

TashRouter

From the same developer as TashTalk, the [TashRouter](#) is described on its website as “a fully standards-compliant AppleTalk router that supports LocalTalk (via LTtoUDP and/or TashTalk) in addition to EtherTalk”. It can, for example, replace bridges like the AsanteTalk devices, which do not bridge networks in a standards-compliant way.

AirTalk

[AirTalk](#) is a device which extends LocalTalk networks over WiFi. Powered via USB or ADB, it allows connection directly to individual LocalTalk devices with a serial cable, or to LocalTalk networks via transceivers.

StarTalk/LT

The [StarTalk/LT](#) is an experimental device which acts as a hub for LocalTalk networks.

Because it acts as a hub, it can be used to “mix-n-match” original Apple LocalTalk-based networks with PhoneNet-based networks.

Currently in prototyping/experimental status, the files to allow those with the capabilities to build their own are on the GitHub page linked above.

Security on GlobalTalk

In this day and age, security concerns are paramount, so it's worth keeping in mind the security- and privacy-related challenges of being an administrator on GlobalTalk.

Google account

To access the GlobalTalk coordinating Google Sheet, a Google account is needed, and all those to whom the Sheet has been shared appear in the list of those able to access the Sheet, showing the e-mail address associated with those Google Accounts.

You may wish to create a separate Google Account tied to an e-mail address specifically for GlobalTalk use if this is a concern for you.

IP address/hostname

The external IP address and/or hostname of your Apple Internet Router node's network is listed in the Google Sheet to aid connection between nodes.

Not placing an entry in there won't prevent you from connecting to other nodes, but as described above in this chapter, the most reliable way to maintain connections is to allow your IP address/hostname to be added to other nodes' configuration to more easily recover from downtime.

◆ **Note** It is bad form to share others' details without their consent—this is especially true for e-mail addresses, real names, IP addresses and domain names which are provided by node administrators on the coordination Google Sheet for GlobalTalk-related use only. Please be mindful of this when sharing any GlobalTalk details, not limited to screenshots which may include such information. If in doubt, reach out—a simple request will allow you to accommodate others' preferences. ◆

Port forwarding

Any port which is forwarded to a device on your network is a small door open into your network.

All administrators must consider if they're happy to have a port forwarded to a device on their network, although in the case of Apple Internet Router nodes, there are likely to be few who are trying to attack these, or have access to available exploits for wider internal network access.

One mitigation might be to implement firewall rules which, for example, only allow port 387 to be forwarded when originating from a known GlobalTalk host. It is beyond the scope of this addendum to detail how such a configuration can be achieved.

Insecure services

Many of the AppleTalk services on GlobalTalk are unencrypted, allow files to be left on other servers, allow Guest access, etc.

These are all security issues in the modern world, but many administrators allow them to occur on GlobalTalk due to the (likely) limited scope to cause significant damage.

Berserk print jobs

Sometimes printing goes awry and instead of the nicely formatted output on a printer, the underlying printer code is spewed out in text, often with very little on each page, and going on for quite some time.

Keep the first print jobs you send to a printer simple until confirmed working, and if you provide access to a printer on your node, maybe leave only a few pages in the printer so berserk print jobs do limited damage.

Viruses

Yes, there has been a virus outbreak (nVIR) on GlobalTalk, although damage was, as far as the author is aware, non-existent.

This outbreak originated from a reliance on disk images prepared and made available through public forums by others—a not uncommon practice in retrocomputing circles—which were then modified and expanded and made available again without virus checking.

In fact, the author's own set of disk images were infected via this path, as were others'.

A salutary lesson, indeed.

Administrators are therefore strongly recommended to install [Disinfectant](#) and the Disinfectant INIT (or other reputable, period-appropriate antivirus software) on their Classic Macintoshes, and in the interests of the security of their own files and OSes, should remain vigilant when using any resources prepared by others.

△ **Important!** It is ultimately each administrator's personal responsibility to confirm they are happy with all access and services originating through their involvement in the GlobalTalk network. △

A vision of GlobalTalk's future

It is 2036, and the Internet as we know it is long dead, reduced to a feudal wasteland of app-only walled gardens.

All important communication is confined to 400kb MFS floppy disks, taped under trash can lids and park benches by clandestine revolutionary types.

'Encryption' is a rare experimental font (Zapf Dingbats v0.35b) released in 1985. Any System 7 Macintosh with a working floppy drive is now worth four dozen eggs—an amount unheard of since the Chicken Panic of '27.

After the post-crisis shakeup in '34, we were lucky to gain a person on the inside.

There was a loophole exploit that allowed them to disable National AI Snooping™ on UDP port 387 from UTC 0300–UTC 0400 every Thursday, during the weekly Lords of Capital meeting.

And thus it began. The #GlobalTalk Revolution of 2036.

Our international flag of unity is the cool crab pride flag, with the motto, “Live, Laugh, LocalTalk ⇄” inked in Chicago across the bottom...

[@likesoldmacs](#), January 2025

Appendix A:

Planning Your AppleTalk Internet

This appendix provides guidelines for planning your AppleTalk internet. Topics discussed include:

- evaluating your need for interconnected networks
- planning your internet's physical layout—including information about router placement, backbone networks, redundant paths, and optimizing performance
- choosing a network-numbering scheme
- specifying network ranges
- dividing your internet into zones

When should you create an internet?

When planning a new network or expanding an existing network, you can use an Apple Internet Router to create an *internet* consisting of two or more interconnected networks.

The router maintains a logical map of networks in an internet and can route data onto the most efficient path to a network. The most efficient path available between any two networks may be either the path having the shortest routing distance in hops—or fewest intervening routers—or the path with the highest data transmission rate. Figure A-1 shows how you can use a router to connect local networks, connect remote networks, and connect networks to a backbone.

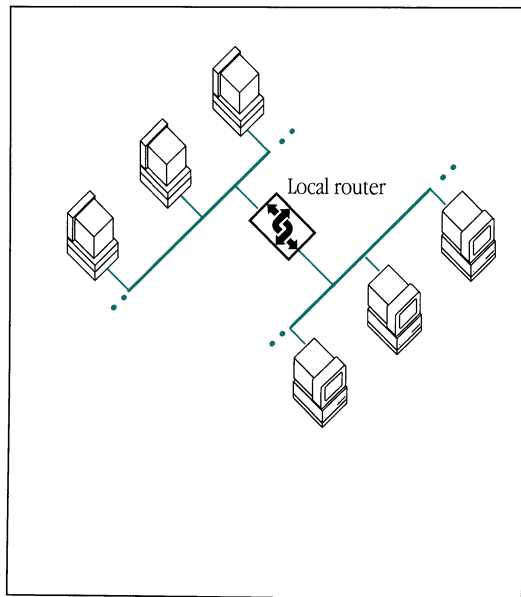
The router allows you to

- *connect two or more local networks* You can interconnect individual networks that are in close proximity to one another, allowing workgroups in different departments of an organization to communicate and share network services.
- *extend an existing network* If a network already includes the maximum number of devices or has the maximum cable length allowed, you can use a router to extend the network. The number of devices on an internet can exceed the 32-device limit for a single LocalTalk network.
- *connect networks of different types* You can connect different types of networks, such as LocalTalk, Ethernet, and Token Ring. Different network types use different *access methods*—including different transmission media, built-in ports or ports on network interface cards, and different AppleTalk connection files.
- *connect two remote networks* You can connect two remote networks or internets through a *half-routing link*, consisting of two half-routers connected to modems communicating over a standard telephone line or a leased line.
- *connect networks to a backbone network* You can connect either local or remote networks to a backbone network to minimize the routing distances between the networks and improve performance. Any two networks connected directly to a backbone are just two hops away from one another. For more information about backbone networks, see the section “Creating a Backbone Network” later in this chapter.
- *connect networks through foreign network systems* You can connect two or more AppleTalk networks or internets through a network system that uses a different protocol family, such as TCP/IP.

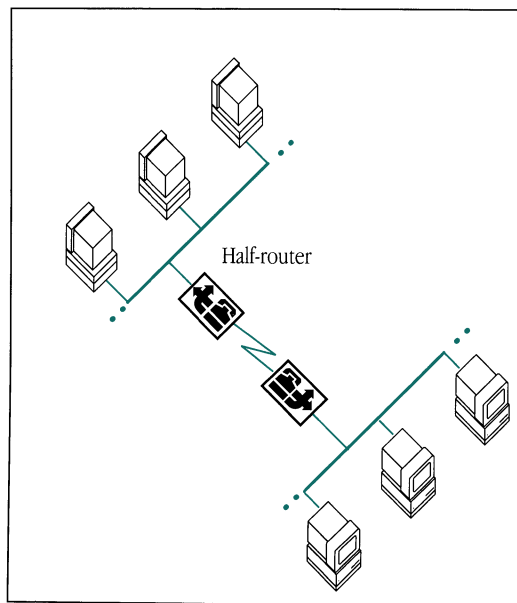


A **router** maintains a logical map of the networks in an internet, in which each network has a unique address.

Local networks



Remote networks



Networks connected to a backbone

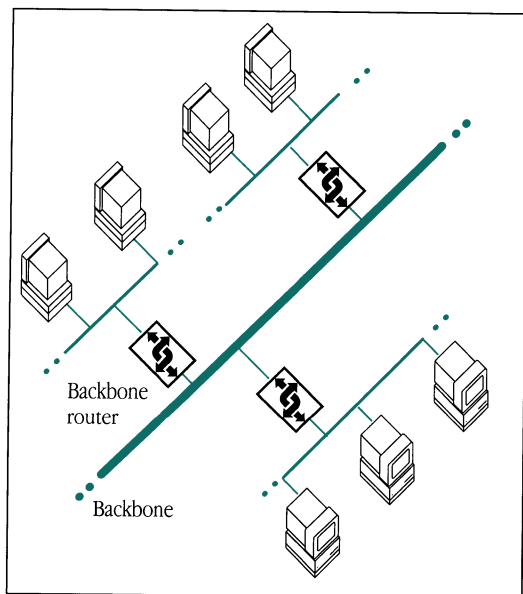


Figure A-1 Using a router

- *isolate local traffic on different parts of an internet* You can improve an internet's performance by creating separate networks for workgroups that generate high levels of network traffic.
- *divide a network into zones* By dividing a network into logical groupings of devices, you can
 - facilitate user's access to shared network services, such as printers and servers
 - accommodate workgroup requirements for network services, minimizing the amount of network traffic between zones and improving network performance

Planning the physical layout of your internet

When designing your internet, plan for growth. Each network in an internet should initially consist of fewer than the maximum number of devices. It's easier to add a device to an existing network than to create an additional network. However, if the level of traffic on a network creates bottlenecks and degrades performance, you can use a router to divide that network into two networks.

Placing routers in an internet

The Apple Internet Router can connect AppleTalk networks that differ in type, topology, and size. You can place a router at any location within a network. Figure A-2 shows some possible router locations.

To determine the optimal location for a router in your internet, follow these guidelines:

- To connect two existing networks, place a router between them.
- To extend an existing network, use a router to subdivide the network into two or more networks.
- To connect two AppleTalk networks of different types—for example, LocalTalk and EtherTalk—place a router between them.

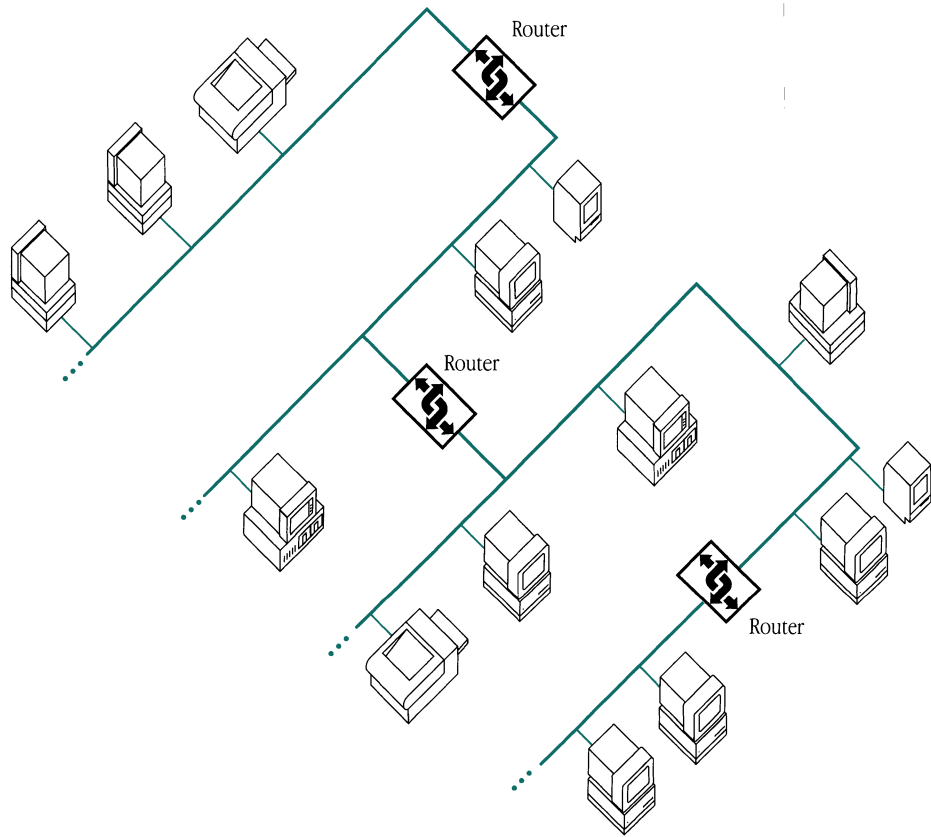


Figure A-2 Router locations

- To connect two remote networks or internets through a half-routing link, connect a router on each network or internet to a modem and a point-to-point link.
- To connect a network to a backbone network, place a router between them.
- To connect two or more AppleTalk networks or internets through a foreign network system, connect a router on each network or internet to the foreign network system.
- To isolate a part of an internet on which there is a high level of traffic, use a router to create separate networks.
- Create an internet layout that minimizes the routing distances between all connected networks.
- On a local internet, create redundant paths between networks to improve network performance and reliability.

- To avoid traffic congestion, balance the levels of network activity on different parts of the internet.
- To prevent unnecessary cross-network traffic, avoid placing a router between users and any devices providing network services to which they require frequent access, unless the devices are connected to a backbone network. For more information about backbone networks, see the next section, “Creating a Backbone Network.”

By following these guidelines for router placement, you can improve performance on your internet.

Creating a backbone network

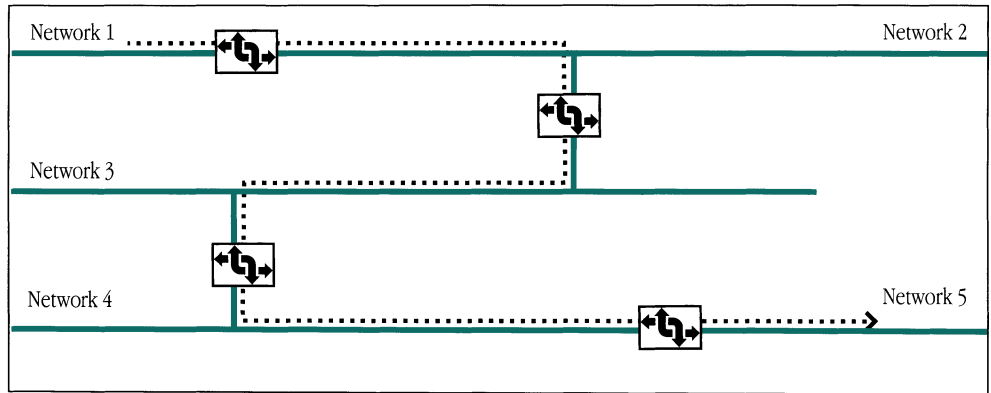
By connecting individual networks in an internet to a backbone network, you can create a highly efficient network layout. A *backbone network* is typically a high-speed network that connects other, lower-speed networks. A backbone network alleviates the problem of cross-network traffic congestion by providing each network in the internet with a more direct route to every other network in the internet. The routing distance between any two networks connected by routers directly to a backbone network is just two hops.

Figure A-3 shows an internet without a backbone network and another internet that includes a backbone network. In the internet with no backbone, four routers connect five networks serially. A packet sent across the internet—from Network 1 to Network 5—would have to travel four hops and contend with network traffic on the three intervening networks. The same packet would have to travel only two hops on the internet with a backbone.

A backbone network is particularly advantageous when you must connect many networks or when the networks being connected are not physically contiguous with one another. To improve access to a device that provides a network service—such as a file server—you can connect the device directly to the backbone.

On an internet built around a backbone network, if a break occurs on any network other than the backbone network, access to network services remains uninterrupted on all other networks connected to the backbone—with the exception of network services that reside on the network on which the break occurred.

An internet without a backbone



An internet with a backbone

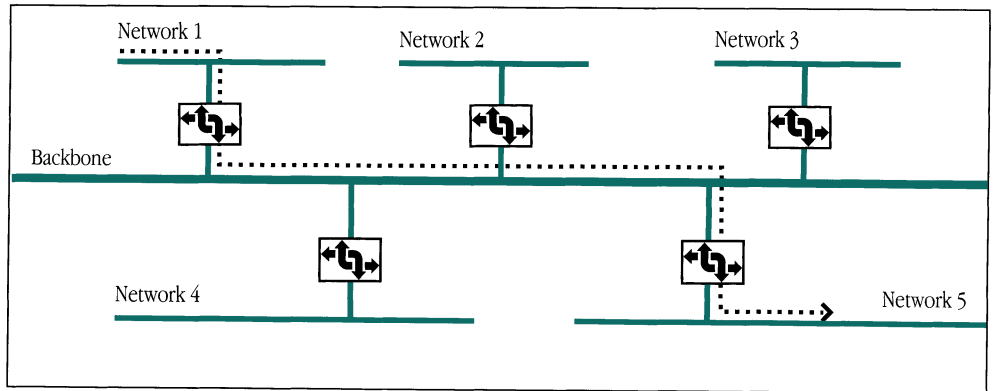


Figure A-3 An internet versus a backbone network

Choosing a type of backbone network

You can use any type of AppleTalk network as a backbone network. While a backbone network that uses the same type of media as the other networks in an internet can minimize routing distances between networks connected directly to it, you can optimize the internet's performance by using a high-speed network—such as an Ethernet or Token Ring network—as a backbone. You can also use a tunnel built on a foreign network system as a backbone.

Connecting networks having different transmission rates

When connecting networks of different types, which have different transmission rates, use high-speed networks where levels of network activity are high. Avoid placing a lower-speed network between two high-speed networks. Figure A-4 shows an inappropriate network layout and two efficient network layouts.

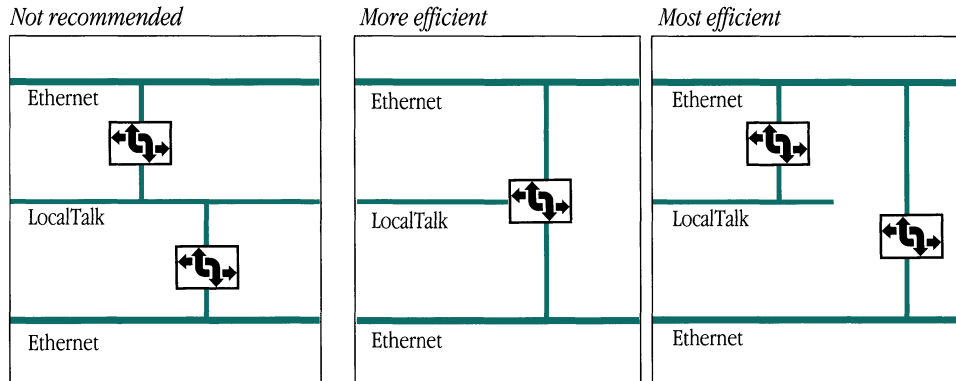


Figure A-4 Network layouts

Where redundant paths exist, the Apple Internet Router generally does not distinguish between networks having different transmission rates. It simply selects the most direct path to a network—that with the fewest hops. To ensure that the router will select a path through a network that has a high transmission rate, you can

- create an internet layout in which the path through a high-speed network has a shorter routing distance
- eliminate any redundant path through a lower-speed network
- increase the routing distance through a half-routing or tunneling port to which a lower-speed network is connected
- designate a half-routing or tunneling port to which a slow point-to-point link or a lower-speed network is connected as a backup path

For more information about redundant paths, see the next section, “Creating Redundant Paths.” Also, see the section “Increasing the Routing Distance Through a Port” in Chapter 7.

Creating redundant paths

By creating redundant paths to each network in an internet, you can ensure that a network will not become inaccessible to the rest of the internet should a break occur on one path. If there is more than one path to a network, the router can select the most efficient path available—either the shortest path or that having the highest transmission rate—improving network performance. Figure A-5 shows the addition of a router to an internet to create a redundant path between two networks. This layout improves the reliability of the internet and reduces the routing distances between some networks.

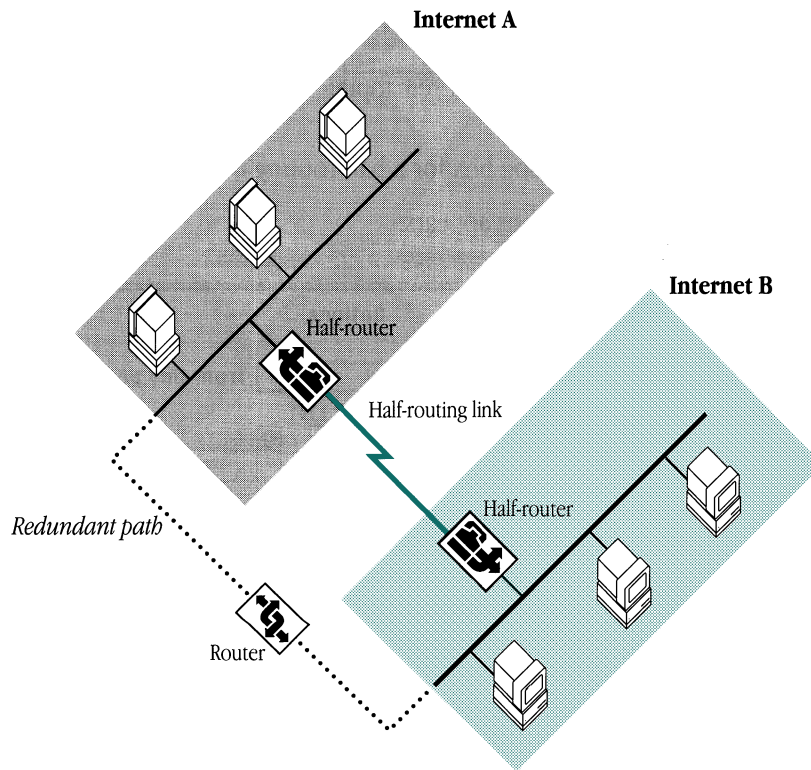


Figure A-5 Creating redundant paths

△ **Important** You must eliminate any redundant paths, or routing loops, that exist across a half-routing link or tunnel before activating network-number remapping on the corresponding half-routing or tunneling port. If the router detects a loop, it will deactivate any tunneling port on which network-number remapping is active. For more information about network-number remapping, see the section “Resolving Numbering Conflicts by Remapping Remote Network Numbers” in Chapter 7. △

If redundant paths having the same routing distance exist between two networks, troubleshooting may be more difficult. You may have difficulty discerning the path selected by the router.

Laying out your internet for optimal performance

Router Manager provides information about network-activity levels and error statistics. To maintain an optimal level of performance on your internet, you should evaluate the levels of network activity on different parts of the internet and endeavor to balance the use of network services.

Evaluating network activity

Devices communicating on an internet generate network traffic. Two types of *traffic* occur on an internet:

- traffic generated by networking devices—for example, when a router sends updated routing information to the other routers on an internet
- traffic generated when users access network services—for example, when a computer accesses a printer, a file server, or another computer

An internet’s size and layout, the different types of network services available on the internet, and the frequency with which users access network services determine the volume of network traffic, or level of activity, on the internet.

When planning your internet, analyze the expected levels of usage for planned network services and estimate the resulting level of network activity. Also, evaluate what workgroups

are likely to generate high levels of network traffic. Then, determine what router placement would balance traffic on the internet. If your internet is built around a backbone network, connect devices providing shared network services directly to the backbone. Avoid placing a router between users and devices that are providing network services frequently accessed by them, unless those devices are connected directly to a backbone. Placing a router between users and such a device would cause unnecessary traffic through the router and on any intervening networks.

Use Router Manager to monitor the current level of activity on the internet. The Router Statistics window shows the number of packets routed and the level of network activity, indicating the current volume of traffic on the internet. The Port Statistics window shows the number of packets routed through each port on the router. The sections “Monitoring Network Activity and Reliability Over Time” and “Monitoring Port Statistics” in Chapter 9 describe the information provided in the Router Statistics and Port Statistics windows.

An excessive volume of traffic on one part of the internet can create bottlenecks, degrade network performance, and cause delays in the delivery of network services to users. If the services available on a given network generate an excessive amount of traffic, use a router to divide the network into two smaller, interconnected networks.

Evaluating network error statistics

Use Router Manager to monitor error statistics for the router. The Router Statistics window shows the current levels of network reliability and network errors. The Port Statistics window shows error statistics for each port on the router. For information about these error statistics, see the sections “Monitoring Network Activity and Reliability Over Time” and “Monitoring Port Statistics” in Chapter 9.

Choosing a network-numbering scheme

When specifying network numbers, it's advisable to use a consistent numbering scheme. For example, the digits of a network number might constitute a code that indicates the network's physical location or department, as shown in Figure A-6.

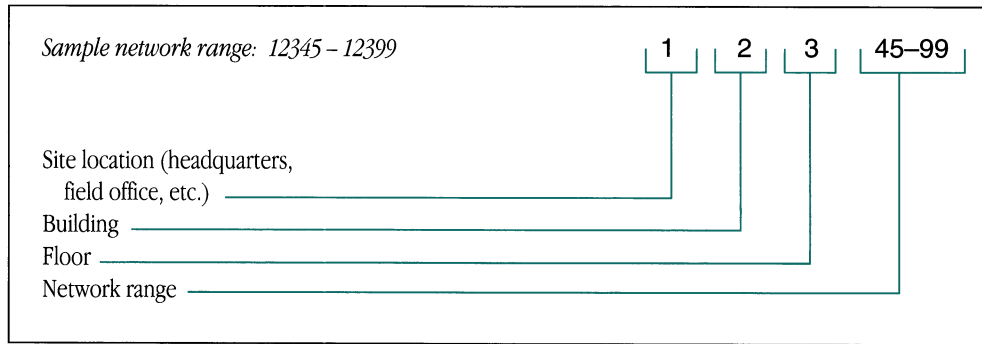


Figure A-6 A network-numbering scheme

This kind of network-numbering scheme

- allows you to reserve network numbers for future networks, facilitating the specification of network numbers when you add networks to your internet
- provides a meaningful identifier for each network on the internet, allowing you to associate the network numbers in a routing table with the physical locations of the corresponding networks
- allows you to connect existing networks without creating network-numbering conflicts

Record the network numbers and ranges for your internet in a logbook, in a spreadsheet, or on a network map.

Specifying network ranges

Each network number in a network range allows you to connect an additional 253 devices. Thus, the size of the network range that you specify for a network determines the maximum number of devices on that network. For example, a network having the range 1–10 can include up to 2530 devices (10 x 253). If you never expect an Ethernet or Token Ring network to expand beyond 253 devices, you can assign that network a network range consisting of a single network number—for example, 100–100.

A network range must be of a sufficient size to allow for future network growth. For example, the network range 1–2 allows expansion up to 506 devices (2 x 253). However,

if a network already consisted of 500 devices, the network range 1–2 would allow you to connect only 6 additional devices to that network. Once the network exceeded this number of devices, you would need to specify a larger range for the network. The *seed routers* on an internet send a network's identifying information to all other routers connected directly to the network. To increase the size of a network range, you would have to stop *all* of the routers on the network, disrupting network services.

You should generally specify a network range that could accommodate at least twice the number of devices currently on your internet. An AppleTalk internet can support up to 65,279 networks, or over 16 million devices ($65,279 \times 253$). Thus, you can specify a large range for each network on the internet and still have enough network numbers available for even a very large internet. To make possible the subsequent expansion of existing network ranges, specify network ranges that are separated from one another by a sequence of network numbers. For example, if you specify the network range 100–110 for one network, specify a network range that starts with the network number 120 for the next network, rather than one that starts with the network number 111.

Dividing an internet into zones

Zones are logical groupings of devices on an AppleTalk internet. Each device on an internet resides in a zone. You can assign any number of devices to a zone and can change groupings of devices into zones without changing the physical network connections between those devices. Zones have no physical boundaries.

When setting up a router, you can create zones by associating one or more zone names with each network connected to the router. You can associate only one zone name with a LocalTalk network. All devices connected to a LocalTalk network are in the same zone. You can associate a zone list consisting of one or more zone names with an Ethernet or Token Ring network. Therefore, you can assign devices on the same Ethernet or Token Ring network to different zones. You can also specify a default zone for the devices on each network. The zone names associated with the networks in an internet appear in zone lists in Router Manager, the Chooser, and other networking applications. For more information about creating zones, see the sections “Defining AppleTalk Zones for a Network” in Chapter 4.

Balancing network services on the internet

Zones facilitate access to shared network services, such as printers and file servers. If an internet with many shared network services were not divided into zones, finding a device in the Chooser's device list would be very time consuming and inconvenient. When accessing a device in the Chooser on an internet that is divided into zones, the user must first select the zone in which the device resides. The user sees only the devices in the zone that is currently selected, rather than all of the devices on the internet. Thus, the user can access devices efficiently.

Facilitating departmental work

You can create zones for users belonging to specific departments or workgroups, and accommodate their special requirements for network services. Users at computers in a zone can most efficiently access shared network services provided by devices in the same zone. Determine what users or workgroups need to communicate or share network services, then assign the appropriate devices to one zone.

Computers or other devices assigned to a zone can reside on the same network or on different networks—even on networks at different physical locations—enabling users to access shared network services efficiently. However, assigning computers on different networks to the same zone may result in high levels of traffic on the internet. As shown in Figure A-7, a user at a computer in Zone B on the Token Ring network who is accessing a file server in Zone B on the LocalTalk network generates traffic on both the intervening Ethernet network and on the LocalTalk network.

Devices connected to different physical networks can be in the same zone.

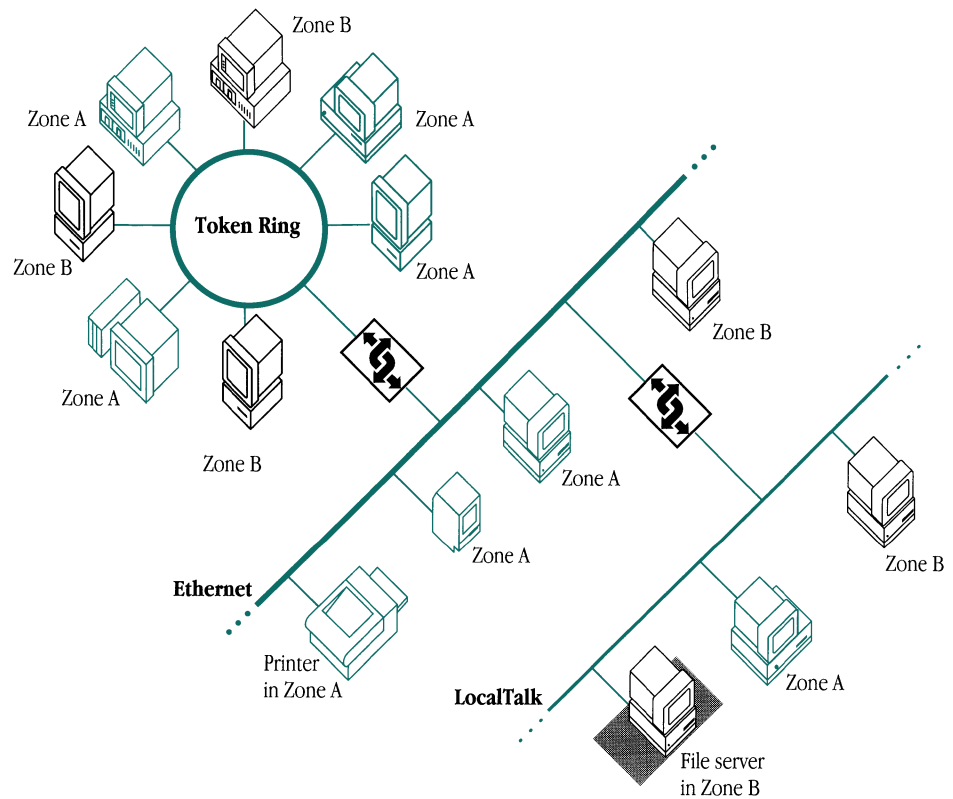


Figure A-7 An internet divided into zones

To isolate traffic on a network in a large internet, you can create a zone and assign only devices on that network to the zone. This minimizes cross-network traffic and improves network performance.

Appendix B:

The Router Manager Program

You can use the Router Manager application program to set up the router, control and troubleshoot router operation, and monitor network performance. The sections that follow briefly describe the program's menus.

File menu

File	
New	⌘N
Open...	⌘O
Close	⌘W

Save	⌘S
Save As...	
Revert to Saved	

Export Data...	

Page Setup...	
Print...	⌘P

Quit	⌘Q

The commands in the File menu allow you to work with setup documents, and to export and print routing information. The File menu includes the standard commands New, Open, Close, Save, Save As, Revert to Saved, Page Setup, Print, and Quit. Refer to the manuals that came with your Macintosh computer for information about how to use these standard commands.

You can use the Export Data command to export the information in the Network Information window or the Port Statistics window to a text document that has a tab-delimited format, as described in the section “Exporting Information” in Chapter 9.

Edit menu

Edit	
Undo	⌘Z

Cut	⌘H
Copy	⌘C
Paste	⌘V
Clear	

Define Port Info...	⌘I
Clear Port Info...	⌘K

Edit	
Undo	⌘Z

Cut	⌘H
Copy	⌘C
Paste	⌘V
Clear Log	

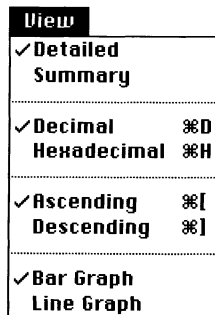
Define Port Info...	⌘I
Clear Port Info...	⌘K

You can use the commands in the Edit menu to edit text, and to display, edit, and clear port information. The Edit menu includes the standard commands Undo, Cut, Copy, Paste, and Clear. For information about using these standard commands, refer to the manuals that came with your Macintosh computer.

When the Router Log is the active window, the Clear command changes to Clear Log, as shown in the figure at the left.

For information about using...	See the section...
The Clear Log command—to clear all entries from the Router Log	“Using the Router Log to Obtain Information About Router Operation” in Chapter 10
The Define Port Info command—to specify, edit, or display a port configuration	“Creating a Setup Document” in Chapter 3
The Clear Port Info command—to clear the information from a port configuration	“Removing a Port Configuration” in Chapter 8

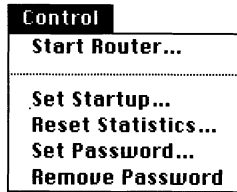
View menu



Using the commands in the View menu, you can control the display of information in setup windows, in the Network Information window, and in the Router Statistics window. A checkmark appears beside each option that is currently selected.

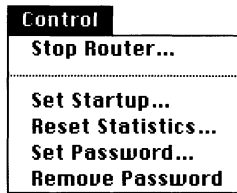
For information about using...	See the section...
The Detailed and Summary commands—to control the display of information in setup windows and in the Network Information window	“Customizing Your View of a Setup Window” in Chapter 8 “Monitoring Network Routing Information” in Chapter 9
The Decimal and Hexadecimal commands—to control the display of numeric information in setup windows and in the Network Information window	“Customizing Your View of a Setup Window” in Chapter 8 “Monitoring Network Routing Information” in Chapter 9
The Ascending and Descending commands—to control the order in which information in the Network Information window is sorted	“Starting the Routing Table” in Chapter 9
The Bar Graph and Line Graph commands—to control the graphical display of information in the Router Statistics window	“Monitoring Network Activity and Reliability Over Time” in Chapter 9

Control menu



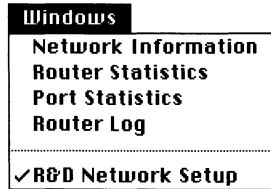
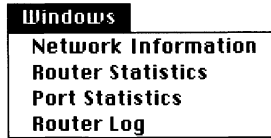
The commands in the Control menu allow you to start and stop the router, select a startup document and other startup options, reset router and port statistics, set an administrator's password for Router Manager, and remove password protection from Router Manager.

When the router is running, the Start Router command changes to Stop Router, as shown in the figures at the left.



For information about using...	See the section...
The Start Router and Stop Router commands—to start and stop the router	"Starting the Router" in Chapter 3 "Stopping the Router" in Chapter 8
The Set Startup command—to select startup options, including the startup document	"Configuring the Router for Startup" in Chapter 3
The Reset Statistics command—to reset router and port statistics	"Resetting Router and Port Statistics" in Chapter 9
The Set Password command—to set an administrator's password for Router Manager	"Specifying an Administrator's Password" in Chapter 3
The Remove Password command—to remove password protection from Router Manager	"Removing Password Protection" in Chapter 8

Windows menu



The Network Information, Router Statistics, Port Statistics, and Router Log commands in the Windows menu allow you to display the corresponding windows when the router is running.

When the router is not running, the Windows menu also contains the names of any setup documents that are currently open. When the router is running, the startup document appears in the Windows menu.

You can also use the Windows menu to make active any window that is currently open. A checkmark beside an item in the Windows menu indicates that the corresponding window is currently the active window.

For information about using...	See the section...
The Network Information window	"Monitoring Network Routing Information" in Chapter 9
The Router Statistics window	"Monitoring Network Activity and Reliability Over Time" in Chapter 9
The Port Statistics window	"Monitoring Port Statistics" in Chapter 9
The Router Log	"Using the Router Log to Obtain Information About Router Operation" in Chapter 10

Glossary

access method A method of encapsulating packets of data for transmission over a network of a specific type that is connected to one of the router's ports—for example, a LocalTalk, DialUp, EtherTalk, or TokenTalk access method. See also *router port*.

access privileges Permissions granted by the owner of a file, folder, or disk that allow another user or group of users to access or make changes to it. A user can set access privileges for file sharing in the Finder; a network administrator, in AppleShare.

address See *network address*.

administrator See *network administrator*.

administrator's password A string of characters that a network administrator must enter to open Router Manager. Compare *caller's password*.

Apple Ethernet Cable System A family of products from Apple Computer that provides connectivity to Ethernet networks, including self-terminating thin coaxial Ethernet cable, transceivers, and media adapters. See also *Ethernet*.

Apple Ethernet Thin Coax Transceiver A device with a built-in terminator that connects a computer or other device that has an Apple Ethernet port to an Ethernet network that uses thin coaxial cable. See also *transceiver*.

AppleShare file server A file server that consists of a Macintosh computer running AppleShare File Server software, and one or more high-capacity hard disks. See also *file server*.

AppleTalk A network system that consists of a family of protocols that allow communication over various types of networks, as well as network services and application programs. See also *network system* and *protocol*.

AppleTalk connection An AppleTalk network of a specific type that is both connected to and communicating with a device.

AppleTalk connection file The software that allows a Macintosh computer to communicate with a specific type of AppleTalk network. Also referred to as an *AppleTalk connection driver*. See also *AppleTalk connection* and *driver*.

AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension An Apple Internet Router extension that allows two AppleTalk networks or internets to communicate through a tunnel built on a TCP/IP network.

AppleTalk network A network on which devices use AppleTalk protocols to communicate.

AppleTalk Phase 2 The current version of the AppleTalk protocol family, which supports large internets. See also *internet*.

AppleTalk port A port that uses either a LocalTalk, EtherTalk, TokenTalk, or other access method to connect to a network of the corresponding type—for example, LocalTalk, Ethernet, or Token Ring.

AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension An Apple Internet Router extension that allows two or more remote AppleTalk networks or internets to communicate over a half-routing link using X.25 protocols.

asynchronous A type of data transmission that is used between computers and modems, in which each message is preceded by a start bit and followed by a stop bit, allowing the transmission of messages at irregular intervals.

backbone network Typically, a central high-speed network—such as an Ethernet or Token Ring network—that connects other, lower-speed networks.

background routing A software process that performs routing in the background, allowing the simultaneous use of the router Macintosh for other purposes while the router is running.

backup path A redundant path through a half-routing or tunneling port that the router uses only to exchange routing information. The router forwards AppleTalk data packets over a backup path only if the primary path to a specific network becomes unavailable. See also *redundant paths*. Compare *primary path*.

bits per second (bps) A unit of measurement for a data transmission rate characteristic of a modem.

broadcast To send data simultaneously to all devices on a network.

bps Acronym for *bits per second*.

buffer Memory reserved for the temporary storage of data whenever the rate at which a device or program receives data exceeds the rate at which it can process the data.

bus topology A type of network topology in which devices are connected serially, from one end of a length of cable to the other. All of the devices have equal access to the network and receive only those packets sent to their address. See also *topology*.

caller's password A string of characters that an administrator enters to allow a remote router to obtain access to the local internet. Compare *administrator's password*.

Chooser A program that allows you to activate and deactivate AppleTalk, and select network services. See also *network service*.

cluster (verb) To represent a range of remapped network numbers as a single extended network consisting of multiple zones, requiring only one entry in a routing table. See also *routing table*.

cluster (noun) A single extended network, consisting of multiple remapped networks and zones, that requires only one entry in a routing table. See also *routing table*.

clustering On a half-routing or tunneling port on which network-number remapping is enabled, the representation by a router of a range of remapped network numbers as a single, extended network, consisting of multiple zones, to minimize routing traffic and routing-information storage requirements. See also *network-number remapping*.

coaxial cable A type of media that consists of a central conducting wire and a surrounding braided-mesh ground wire, separated by a layer of insulation, and an outer layer of shielding. It is appropriate for networks that have high transmission rates, span long distances, and are subject to high levels of electromagnetic interference. See also *media*.

configuration See *port configuration*.

connection See *AppleTalk connection* and *network connection*.

CRC Acronym for *cyclic redundancy check*.

cross-network traffic The network activity generated on intervening networks when two devices communicate.

cyclic redundancy check (CRC) An error-checking control technique that inserts a frame-check sequence based on the content of a frame at the end of that frame to verify that no transmission errors have occurred. A

frame is a unit of data transmitted by data-link layer protocols that allow communication with LocalTalk, Ethernet, Token Ring, or other networks.

data packet See *packet*.

data link error A network-system hardware error detected by the router on receiving or transmitting packets.

decimal A base ten numbering system.

dedicated router A router running on a computer on which no other network services reside and no other application programs are running. Compare *nondedicated router*.

default A preset value or setting that a computer or program uses, unless another value or setting is specified.

default zone The zone in which a device connected to a network appears until a user or the administrator selects a different zone for that device.

device A hardware unit—such as a Macintosh computer or a LaserWriter printer.

device driver See *driver*.

device hiding Configuring an AppleTalk port to provide device-level security by hiding specific devices or all devices on the network or internet connected to that port, from another port or all other ports on the router.

device list In Router Manager, the Chooser, or another program, a list of devices connected to a network.

device name An identifier specified for a computer, peripheral, or other device on a network.

device type A type of service on a network—for example, a type of computer or peripheral device.

dial-in link A half-routing link through a telephone line.

DialUp An access method for the printer or modem port that allows the port to function as a half-routing port. See also *access method*.

distance See *routing distance*.

driver System software that is generally installed in the Extensions folder, and allows a computer to control the operation of an expansion card or peripheral device—such as the LaserWriter driver.

Ethernet A widely used, high-speed network type that provides a transmission rate of 10 megabits per second, supports bus or star topologies, and uses various types of media.

Ethernet port A physical port to which an Ethernet network is connected. See also *port*.

EtherTalk An AppleTalk connection or access method that allows an Ethernet network to use AppleTalk protocols. See also *access method* and *AppleTalk connection*.

export To save the data in the Network Information window or Port Statistics window to a document with a tab-delimited format.

extension See *router extension*.

exterior router An AppleTalk router on which one or more ports are connected to an AppleTalk internet, and one or more ports are connected to either a foreign network system or a half-routing link.

file server A computing device with one or more high-capacity hard disks that allows users to store, retrieve, and share folders, documents, and programs over a network. See also *AppleShare file server*.

foreign network system A network system that uses a protocol family other than AppleTalk—for example, TCP/IP. See also *network system*.

forwarding port A port through which the router sends packets to their destination networks.

fully connected tunnel A tunnel on which all of the connected exterior routers can communicate with one another. Compare *partially connected tunnel*. See also *tunnel*.

half-router A router that is used to connect two remote AppleTalk networks or internets. See also *remote network* and *router*.

half-routing Two remote AppleTalk networks using the DialUp access method to communicate over a point-to-point link, forming a wide area internet. See also *point-to-point link* and *wide area internet*.

half-routing link A type of point-to-point link, consisting of two half-routers connected to modems communicating over a standard telephone line or a leased line. See also *point-to-point link*.

half-routing port A port that uses the DialUp access method, allowing an internet to connect to a remote network. See also *remote network*.

hexadecimal A base 16 numbering system. In Router Manager, a \$ character must precede a hexadecimal number.

high-speed network A network that has a high transmission rate, such as an Ethernet or Token Ring network. See also *transmission rate*.

hop The unit by which the routing distance between two networks in an internet is measured. Each hop corresponds to a router through which a data packet must pass as it traverses the path from one network to the other. See also *routing distance*.

hop count The number of routers through which a packet must pass to reach its destination network. The maximum hop count is 15 hops.

hop-count reduction On a half-routing or tunneling port on which network-number remapping is enabled, allowing routing distances greater than 15 hops. When hop-count reduction is enabled on a port, all networks accessible out that port appear to be one hop away from all AppleTalk networks in the router's local internet. This allows the creation of larger internets.

hop-count weighting On a slow half-routing or tunneling port, increasing the routing distance through the port by a specific number of hops.

host In a network, a central or controlling computer that provides supporting services, such as computation, database access, or special programs, to multiple users.

host ID Either a TCP/IP host address that has the format *###.###.###.###*, in which each group of three numbers has a value between 0 and 255, or a TCP/IP host name that does not begin with a number.

host list A list of host computers connected to an IP tunneling port.

internet Two or more networks, of the same type or different types, that are connected by routers, allowing them to communicate and share network services. See also *network*.

internet routing An internet router receiving packets from devices on the internet, then forwarding them to their destinations over the most efficient path.

IP address A unique identifier assigned to a host on a TCP/IP internet.

IP Tunnel An AppleTalk connection or access method that uses AppleTalk protocols to communicate through a tunnel built on a TCP/IP network. See also *access method* and *AppleTalk connection*.

kilobits per second (Kbps) A unit of measurement for the data transmission rate that is characteristic of a LocalTalk network.

Kbps Acronym for *kilobits per second*.

LAN Acronym for *local area network*.

leased line A private telephone line leased from a telephone company.

link See *half-routing link* and *point-to-point link*.

local area network (LAN) A network that consists of computers and shared devices connected by one type of media, at a single location. See also *network*. Compare *wide area network*.

local internet An AppleTalk internet comprising all connected networks that are administrated by the same network administrator, and are not accessed through half-routing or tunneling ports. See also *half-routing port*, *internet*, and *tunneling port*.

local network An AppleTalk network connected directly to an Apple Internet Router.

LocalTalk An AppleTalk connection or access method for the printer, modem, or other serial port. See also *access method*, *AppleTalk connection*, and *LocalTalk network*.

LocalTalk cable A shielded twisted-pair cable that generally connects a LocalTalk network to the printer port on a Macintosh computer and allows a maximum of 32 devices on a single network configured in a bus topology. See also *printer port*.

LocalTalk network A type of AppleTalk network that uses the connection software and hardware built into a Macintosh computer, provides a transmission rate of 230.4 Kbps, supports bus or star topologies, and uses various types of media. See also *AppleTalk network*.

LocalTalk port A physical port to which a LocalTalk network is connected. See also *port*.

loop See *routing loop*.

lower-speed network A network that has a low to moderate transmission rate, such as LocalTalk network. See also *transmission rate*.

Macintosh startup The process of starting up a Macintosh computer. Compare *router startup*.

MacTCP driver A program installed in the Extensions folder that implements TCP/IP on a Macintosh computer.

media Electrical cables, fiber-optic cables, or other physical conductors that transmit data between devices on a network.

megabits per second (Mbps) A unit of measurement for a data transmission rate that is characteristic of an Ethernet or Token Ring network.

Mbps Acronym for *megabits per second*.

modem A contraction of *modulator/demodulator*. A device that connects a computer or network to another computer or network over a standard telephone line or a leased line.

modem port On the back panel of a Macintosh, the socket indicated by a telephone icon, to which you can connect a modem or a LocalTalk network. This serial port has a higher interrupt priority than the printer port. See also *LocalTalk network* and *printer port*.

Name Lookup A process that binds the names of network devices to their network addresses.

Name Request A process that requests the names of network devices to be included in device lists.

native internets Internets that communicate using the same protocol family.

network A group of interconnected, individually controlled computers and peripheral devices, and the hardware, media, and software that connect them. A network allows users to communicate and share network services—such as printers and file servers.

network activity See *traffic*.

network address An identifier for an AppleTalk network—a network number for a LocalTalk network or a network range for any other type of AppleTalk network—that must be unique in an internet. See also *network number* and *network range*.

network administrator A person who is responsible for setting up, maintaining, and troubleshooting a network.

network connection The physical media connecting devices in a network. See also *media*.

Network control panel In the Control Panels folder, a program that allows an administrator to select the AppleTalk connection and zone for a Macintosh. See also *AppleTalk connection* and *zone*.

network hiding Providing basic network-level security on a wide area internet by hiding a specific AppleTalk network from a half-routing or tunneling port on that router.

network information The network number or network range and zone name or zone list for a port. See also *network number*, *network range*, *zone list*, and *zone name*.

network list A list of networks to be hidden.

network number A decimal or hexadecimal number that uniquely identifies a LocalTalk network. Compare *network range*.

network-numbering conflict A conflict that results when two different networks on an internet have the same network number or range, or have overlapping network ranges.

network-number remapping On a half-routing or tunneling port, the automatic assignment by the router of remote network numbers to a different range of network numbers to resolve numbering conflicts. See also *clustering* and *network number*.

network range A range of contiguous network numbers that uniquely identifies each EtherTalk or TokenTalk network on an AppleTalk internet. Compare *network number*.

network service A shared resource to which a network provides access. Network services include shared peripheral devices—such as printers and file servers—shared files on network devices, and electronic mail systems. See also *file server* and *server*.

network system A family of network components—including computers, shared peripheral devices, and the hardware and software that connect them—for a specific network type or for networks that use a specific protocol family, such as AppleTalk or TCP/IP. See also *protocol family*.

network interface card An expansion card that provides one or more physical ports for a specific type of network, and is installed in a NuBus™ expansion slot or in a processor direct slot.

network type One of the various kinds of networks that can use AppleTalk protocols, including LocalTalk, Ethernet, and Token Ring. Network types have different transmission rates, support different types of media and topologies, and use different AppleTalk connections.

next router A router on the path to a destination network to which a forwarding port transmits packets. See also *forwarding port* and *router*.

node An addressable computer or other device on an AppleTalk network. See also *device*.

node ID Abbreviation for *node identifier*.

node identifier (node ID) A number between 1 and 254 that with a device's AppleTalk network number uniquely identifies that device on an AppleTalk network.

nondedicated router A router running on a computer that provides concurrent network services or on which another application program is running. Compare *dedicated router*.

nonseed port A port configured to obtain a connected network's identifying information—including its network number or network range and zone name or zone list—from a seed router connected to that network. Compare *seed port*.

nonseed router A router that obtains the network number or network range and the zone name or zone list for a connected network from a seed router connected to that network. Compare *seed router*.

packet A single unit of data that is formatted for transmission over a network and includes control elements, such as a source address and a destination address.

partially connected tunnel A tunnel on which some exterior routers cannot communicate with some other exterior routers connected to the tunnel. Compare *fully connected tunnel*. See also *tunnel*.

password See *administrator's password* and *caller's password*.

path A route over which a packet travels when one device transmits data to another device on a network. When one or more routers are present on an internet, a route over which one router forwards data to the next router until it reaches its destination. See also *redundant paths*.

peripheral device A unit of hardware connected to and controlled by a computer—such as a printer, modem, video monitor, or disk drive.

physical port See *port*.

point-to-point link A communications path between two routers that may consist of modems communicating over a standard telephone line or a leased line. See also *modem*.

port A socket on the back panel of a computer or on a network interface card into which you can plug a cable that physically connects a network or a peripheral device. See also *modem port* and *printer port*.

port configuration The port information specified for a port in a setup document.

port description An administrator's description of the network connected to a port. By default, the name of the physical port.

port statistics Statistical information for each port configured on the router and totals for the router, about the levels of traffic on a port and the numbers of errors that occur on the network or internet connected to a port.

port status The current condition of a port—either active or inactive.

Preferences folder A folder in the System Folder that contains files that store user-specified preferences for application programs.

primary path Where redundant paths exist, the path between two internets that a router typically uses. Compare *backup path*. See also *path* and *redundant path*.

printer port On the back panel of a Macintosh, the socket indicated by a printer icon, to which you can connect a printer or a LocalTalk network. This port is a serial port. See also *modem port*.

protocol A standard set of rules that govern the sending and receiving of information over data communication lines.

protocol family A set of protocols that govern data communication on a specific network system—such as AppleTalk or TCP/IP. See also *AppleTalk* and *TCP/IP*.

redundant paths Two or more paths that connect a pair of devices communicating on an internet. See also *path*.

remapping See *network-number remapping*.

remapping range On a half-routing or tunneling port, a range of network numbers that is reserved for use when remapping network numbers for networks accessible through that port. See also *network-number remapping*.

remote network A network at another site that is connected to the router by a point-to-point link. See also *point-to-point link*.

repeater A device that extends the maximum length of cable in a single network.

ring A type of network topology in which cables connect devices in a closed loop. See also *topology*.

route To forward packets received from devices on a network to their destinations over the most efficient path.

router A device that connects two or more AppleTalk networks of the same type or different types—for example, a LocalTalk and a Token Ring network—isolating traffic within each network. When a router receives data from devices on the network, it forwards the data to its destination over the most efficient path available.

router extension Software that extends the capabilities of the Apple Internet Router.

Router Installer A program that installs the router software on the startup disk in a Macintosh that will be used as a router.

Router Log A document that contains a record of router operations, including port status, and errors that occur at startup or during router operation.

router Macintosh A Macintosh computer on which a router is installed or running.

Router Manager An application program that allows an administrator to set up the router and configure its ports, control and troubleshoot router operation, and monitor router performance.

router name An identifier that an administrator assigns to a router Macintosh.

router port A physical port and the access method that a router uses to communicate with a network connected to one of its ports. See also *access method* and *port*.

router startup The process of starting the router. Compare *Macintosh startup*.

router statistics Statistical information for the router about the number of packets routed, and the levels of network activity, network reliability, and errors occurring on the internet.

router status indicator In the Network control panel, an indication of the router's current status—on or off.

routing distance The distance in hops between two networks, or the number of routers through which a packet must pass to reach its destination network.

routing loop A condition that exists when a router sends packets that return to the router through a redundant path. Compare *redundant paths*.

routing table Routing information that is maintained by the router for each destination network on an internet, specifying its network number or range, routing distance, forwarding port, and next router.

routing table entry Routing information maintained by the router for a single network on an internet, including its network number or range, routing distance, forwarding port, and next router. See also *routing table*.

routing traffic Network traffic caused by sending routing information. See also *traffic*.

script A program that controls the operation of the Router Installer software or a modem.

seed port A port configured with a network number or network range and a zone name or zone list for a connected network. Compare *nonseed port*.

seed router A router on which you specify a network number or network range and a zone name or zone list for a network when configuring the port to which that network is connected. A seed router sends a network's identifying information to all other routers connected directly to that network. Compare *nonseed router*.

serial port A port through which computers and peripheral devices communicate data serially—one bit at a time. The modem port and printer port are serial ports on the back panel of a Macintosh to which you can connect a modem, a printer, or a LocalTalk network. See also *modem port*, *port*, and *printer port*.

server A computer that provides network services—such as file or print services. See also *file server*.

service See *network service*.

setup document A file created in Router Manager that identifies the router and defines the router's port configurations. See also *port configuration*.

setup window In Router Manager, a window that displays an overview of the information for ports configured in a setup document.

shared disk A hard disk or CD-ROM disc connected to a computer on a network, which contains files that users at other computers on the network can access.

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) An industry-standard protocol that allows an administrator to manage devices on a complex multivendor network.

SNMP Acronym for *Simple Network Management Protocol*.

SNMP agent Software that allows an administrator working at a remote computer to obtain statistical and other information from the router.

star A type of network topology in which all devices are connected to a central controlling device, or hub. See also *topology*.

startup See *Macintosh startup* and *router startup*.

startup document The setup document that the router uses at startup. See also *router startup* and *setup document*.

startup options Options that either control router startup or take effect at startup. See also *startup document*.

star-wired ring A type of network topology in which each device on a Token Ring is connected to a central wiring

concentrator called a multistation access unit (MAU). See also *ring*, *Token Ring*, and *topology*.

T-connector A type of connector that plugs into an Ethernet port on a computer, which must have either a thin coaxial Ethernet cable or a terminator plugged into each side of the connector.

TCP/IP Acronym for *Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol*. A family of protocols that allows the interconnection of various types of computers in a local or wide area network. TCP controls data transmission and IP controls routing. See also *protocol*.

TCP/IP network A network that communicates using the TCP/IP family of protocols.

terminator An electronic resistance device installed at either end of a bus network. The Apple Ethernet Thin Coax Transceiver and Apple Ethernet cables have built-in terminators. Also referred to as a *terminating resistor*.

thin coaxial cable A type of coaxial cable that has a $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch diameter and connects the devices on an Ethernet network in a bus topology. Also referred to as *thinnet*. See also *coaxial cable*.

token A special type of data packet that one device on a Token Ring passes to another device, to control access to the network. A device can transmit data on the network only when it possesses the token.

Token Ring A widely used type of network that provides transmission rates of 4 or 16 Mbps, uses shielded or unshielded twisted-pair cable, and has a star-wired ring topology. Token passing controls access to the network. See also *token*.

Token Ring port A physical port to which a Token Ring network is connected. See also *port*.

TokenTalk An AppleTalk connection that allows a Token Ring network to use AppleTalk protocols. See also *AppleTalk connection*.

topology The physical layout of devices and cables in a network. See also *bus*, *ring*, *star*, and *star-wired ring*.

traffic The volume of data packets generated by devices communicating over a network connection or through a device.

transceiver A device that transmits and receives data, and allows a computer to connect to a specific type of media. See also *media*.

transmission rate The speed at which a network can transfer data.

troubleshooting The process of defining a problem's cause and isolating its source, then solving the problem.

tunnel A virtual data communications link that allows networks or internets using the same protocol family to communicate with one another through a foreign network system that uses a different protocol family, or a half-routing link. See also *foreign network system* and *half-routing link*.

tunneling Two or more AppleTalk networks or internets communicating through a tunnel built on a foreign network system, generally forming a wide area internet. See also *foreign network system*, *tunnel*, and *wide area internet*.

tunneling port A port that is configured for tunneling and uses an access method for a foreign network system to provide wide area connectivity between two or more internets.

user port The AppleTalk connection for nonrouting services available on the Macintosh when the router is running, which determines the zone in which the router Macintosh and any network services residing on that Macintosh appear in the Chooser. See also *AppleTalk connection* and *zone*.

WAN Acronym for *wide area network*.

wide area internet An internet that consists of computers and shared devices at remote locations connected by a half-routing link or tunnel.

wide area network (WAN) A network that consists of computers and shared devices at remote locations connected by a half-routing link or tunnel. Compare *local area network*.

wildcard A typographic character that signifies “all possible values” in the the names of devices, device types, routers, and zones.

X.25 An access method for a physical port that corresponds to an Apple Serial NB Card installed in the router Macintosh, which allows the port to function as a half-routing port. Also, the CCITT (Consultative Committee for International Telephony and Telegraphy) standard protocols and message formats for packet-switching networks. See also *access method* and *protocol*.

X.25 network A packet-switching network in which routers communicate over point-to-point links using X.25 protocols. A type of wide area network. See also *point-to-point link*.

zone A logical grouping of devices on an AppleTalk internet that facilitates access to shared network services. A network administrator defines the zones in an internet when setting up the router. Each device on the internet resides in a zone. To access a device in the Chooser, you must first select the zone in which the device resides.

zone list A list of one or more zone names defined for any type of AppleTalk port other than a LocalTalk network—for example, an EtherTalk or TokenTalk network. A user can assign a device on a network to any zone listed for that network.

zone name An identifier for the single zone defined for a LocalTalk network or one of the names in a zone list.

zone table Zone information maintained by the router for each destination network on an internet, mapping network numbers to zone names and network ranges to zone lists.

zone table entry Zone information maintained by the router for a single network on an internet, including its zone name or zone list.

Index

A

access method

- changing, for port 132
- configuring 21, 35–37, 38–40, 48–49
- DialUp 18, 21, 48–49, 132
- displaying 19
- for Ethernet port 2, 18, 38–40
- EtherTalk 10, 18, 21, 38–40
- for foreign network system 21
- for forwarding port 91
- for half-routing port 48–49
- IP Tunnel 2, 18
- LocalTalk 18, 20, 21, 35–37, 132
- for modem port 18, 35–37, 132
- for network type 140
- for physical port 18, 91
- for printer port 18, 35–37, 132
- for router port 18
- in routing table 91
- removing port configuration for 84
- selecting 18, 19–20
- for Token Ring port 2, 18, 38–40
- TokenTalk 10, 18, 21, 38–40
- X.25 3

activating

- DialUp port 52
- EtherTalk port 40
- half-routing port 52, 121, 123
- LocalTalk port 36

port

- failed, because of conflicting port information 138
- general 22, 25, 29, 78, 124
- only on which no errors occur 25
- at router startup 62, 131
- router at Macintosh startup 24
- TokenTalk port 40
- tunneling port 123, 124
- active ports 22
- active window 159
- administrator's password
 - changing 87
 - entering, to open Router Manager 27, 77
 - forgetting 27
 - removing 88
 - specifying 27
 - verifying 27, 87
- answer mode 52–53, 121
- answer-and-call-back mode 54–55, 121
- answering to establish connection 52–53, 121
- Apple Ethernet cable 126
- Apple Ethernet LC Card 13
- Apple Ethernet NB Card 13
- Apple Ethernet Thin Coax Transceiver 126
- Apple Internet Router *See also* router
 - background operation 29
 - as a dedicated router 6
 - extensions to 2, 3

- general 1, 13, 140, 142
- installing 10, 128
- memory required 129
- as a nondedicated router 6
- ports 21
- problems with, solving 125–128
- routing over redundant paths 146
- setting up 17–27
- SNMP support 89
- upgrading from AppleTalk Internet Router version 2.0 11–12
- zone, selecting for 16
- Apple Internet Router Basic Connectivity Package. *See* Basic Connectivity Package
- Apple Internet Router Basic Connectivity Installer* disks
 - backing up 7
 - installing the router software with 7–8
- Apple Serial NB Card 3
- AppleTalk
 - deactivating 29
 - network services inaccessible 135
- AppleTalk connection
 - changing, with Chooser open 16
 - current 15, 132, 134, 135
 - default 14
 - EtherTalk connection 15
 - installed with router software 15
 - LocalTalk Built-In connection 14, 15

- AppleTalk connection (*continued*)
 - LocalTalk connection for modem port 15
 - network address different from that specified for 134
 - in Network control panel 15
 - port information for, clearing 84, 135
 - problems with
 - error occurred when installing driver for 135
 - files not in Extensions folder 129, 131
 - network address different from that specified for 134
 - no routers accessible from 133
 - no zone names obtained from 133
 - undefined port corresponds to 135
 - wrong, selected as user port 113
 - TokenTalk connection 15
 - as user port 14–16, 76, 134
 - AppleTalk internets. *See also* internets
 - connecting
 - remote 2, 3, 47
 - through point-to-point link 3
 - through tunnel 2, 57–59 (fig.), 140
 - exterior routers and 59
 - networks on 151
 - zones, dividing into 151–153 (fig.)
 - AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension 2, 18, 57.
 - See also* wide area internet
 - problems; wide area routing options
 - AppleTalk networks. *See also* networks
 - as backbone networks 145
 - connecting
 - to another of a different size 142
 - to another of a different topology 142
 - to another of a different type 142
 - to another through a foreign network system 143
 - in internet 2
 - remote 2, 3, 47
 - through tunnel 2, 57–59, 140
 - exterior routers and 59
 - network numbers for 33, 36, 81
 - network ranges for 33, 39, 81
 - number of, connected directly to router 13
 - seed router for, configuring 32
 - zones in 34, 37
 - AppleTalk packets. *See also* packets
 - encapsulating and decapsulating 59
 - forwarded by router 99
 - forwarding, on backup path 69
 - number of, routed 96
 - per second in Network Activity graph 98
 - received by router 99
 - statistics for, resetting 101
 - AppleTalk Phase 2 1, 6, 100, 112
 - AppleTalk port. *See also* EtherTalk port; LocalTalk port; modem port; port; printer port; seed port; TokenTalk port
 - access methods for 21
 - configuring 31–46, 83
 - with conflicting port information 117
 - deactivated because of conflicting port information 117
 - hiding devices connected to 43–46
 - routing table for 65
 - as seed port 118
 - types of 2
 - AppleTalk protocols
 - detecting duplicate device names 114
 - maximum number of hops allowed by 68
 - native networks or internets and 57
 - wildcard characters in 36, 131, 132, 133
 - AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension 3.
 - See also* wide area internet
 - problems; wide area routing options
 - AppleTalk zone. *See also* zone
 - changing, for router 76
 - defining, for network 34
 - Apple Token Ring 4/16 NB Card 13
 - application programs
 - copying from file servers 110
 - device lists in other 99, 109
 - problem in 106
 - quitting other 8, 128
 - text documents read by other 102, 112, 156
 - Ascending command 95, 157
 - ascending order, sorting routing information in 95
 - asterisk (*) character 36, 132
 - asynchronous modem 18, 51, 53. *See also* modem
 - automatic reconnection 51
- ## B
- backbone networks
 - connecting
 - networks to 141 (fig.), 143
 - networks with different transmission rates 146
 - servers directly to 144, 149
 - creating 144–146 (fig.)
 - improving
 - performance with 110, 144
 - reliability with 144
 - layouts of 146 (fig.)
 - types of 145
 - backing up disks 7
 - backup path
 - port as 69–70
 - preventing router from using 70, 124
 - router's use of 69–70, 124
 - traffic, reducing on tunneling port 69
 - Bar Graph command 97, 157
 - bar graph, displaying router statistics as 96 (fig.), 97
 - Basic Connectivity Package
 - general 2, 7
 - installing
 - selected software options 9–11
 - on a startup disk 7–9
 - when upgrading from AppleTalk Internet Router version 2.0 11–1
 - system requirements for 6
 - broadcasting routing table 65

C

- cable length, maximum exceeded 107, 109, 140
- caller's password
 - invalid 118, 121, 133
 - specifying 50, 53, 54–55
 - using, on half-routing links 50, 54
 - verifying 51, 53, 55
 - when answering to establish connection 53
 - when calling back to establish connection 54–55
 - when originating a connection 50–51
- calling to establish connection 50–52, 121
- calling back to establish connection 54–55, 121
- call mode 50–52, 121
- Chooser
 - deactivating AppleTalk in 29
 - device list in 152
 - hiding
 - devices and 43, 45
 - networks and 72, 73
 - Name Requests and 99
 - problems in
 - device in device list intermittently in 109
 - device in wrong zone in 113
 - device name not in 115–116
 - hidden device in 114–115
 - no zones or devices across half-routing link in 121
 - no zones or devices across tunnel in 120
 - no zones or devices on network
 - connected directly to router in 125
 - no zones or devices on part of internet in 127
 - only zones and devices in network found first in 116
 - open when changing AppleTalk connection 16
 - zone name for inaccessible network in 123
 - zones and devices across half-routing link intermittently in 122
 - zones and devices on hidden network in 123
 - zone name or list in 82, 151
- Clear command 156
- Clear Log command 112, 156, 157
- Clear Port Info command 84, 157
- Close command 156
- cluster 65, 66–67, 123
- clustering remapped networks
 - constraints on 66–67
 - forcing recluster 123, 125
 - general 65–66 (fig.)
 - to minimize routing traffic on internet 65
 - router unable to detect loop when 63, 125
- and routing table 91
- turning on/off 66
- command
 - Ascending 95, 157
 - Bar Graph 97, 157
 - Clear 156
 - Clear Log 112, 156, 157
 - Clear Port Info 84, 157
 - Control Panels 14, 76
 - Decimal 86, 93, 157
 - Define Port Info 20, 157
 - Descending 95, 157
 - Detailed 86, 93, 157
 - Export Data 102, 156
 - Hexadecimal 86, 93, 157
 - Line Graph 97–98, 157
 - Network Information 90, 159
 - New 19
 - Open 80
 - Port Statistics 98, 159
 - Quit 29
 - Remove Password 88, 158
 - Reset Statistics 101, 158
 - Router 11
 - Router Log 111–112, 159
 - Router Setup 11
 - Router Statistics 96, 159
- Save 78
- Set Password 27, 87, 158
- Set Startup 23, 24, 25, 158
- Start Router 28, 79, 158
- Stop Router 28, 79, 158
- Summary 86, 93, 157
- configuring. *See also* port configuration
 - access method
 - DialUp 48–55
 - EtherTalk 21, 38–42
 - general 20
 - LocalTalk 21, 35–37
 - only one, for printer and modem port 132
 - exterior router 62
 - port
 - AppleTalk 2, 21, 31–46
 - EtherTalk 21, 38–42
 - general 21–22
 - half-routing 21, 48–55, 61–74
 - LocalTalk 21, 35–37
 - seed 34
 - TokenTalk 21, 38–42
 - tunneling 21, 61–74
 - user 20
 - X.25 22
 - router
 - as nonseed router 32
 - as seed router 32
 - for startup 22–26
 - wide area routing options 61–74
- connecting networks
 - with different transmission rates 146
 - to router 13
- connection
 - answering to establish 52–53
 - broken 121
 - calling back to establish 54–55
 - calling to establish 50–52
 - modem, broken 121
 - network
 - break in 108, 125
 - grouping devices without changing 151

- connection (*continued*)
 - originating 50–52
 - router unable to reestablish 121
 - selected in Port Info window 51, 121
- Connection pop-up menu 51
- continuous retries 51
- Control menu 158
- Control Panels command 14, 76
- Control Panels window 14, 76
- cross-network traffic, minimizing 144, 153
- current startup disk of Macintosh 7
- Current Status Off 11
- Customize dialog box 10
- customizing installation of router
 - software 9–11
- cyclic redundancy check (CRC) errors 109

D

- data link errors 99–100 (fig.), 128
- data packets. *See* AppleTalk packets; packets
- data transmission rate
 - connecting different network types and 146
 - for modem 51, 122
 - modem reduced 122
 - and Packet Buffer Overflow 100, 122
 - for router too slow 128
 - using network system with faster 110, 122
 - using path with high 140, 146, 147
- date statistics last reset 96, 101
- deactivating
 - AppleTalk in Chooser 29
 - DialUp port 52
 - EtherTalk port 40
 - half-routing port 52, 121, 123
 - LocalTalk port 36
 - port
 - functioning as backup path 124
 - general 22, 29, 78
 - TokenTalk port 40
 - tunneling port 123, 125
 - user port 78
- decapsulating AppleTalk packets 59
- Decimal command 86, 93, 157
- decimal number
 - network number specified as 36, 86, 93
 - network range specified as 39, 86, 93
 - numeric display format 86, 93
- dedicated router 6
- Define Port Info command 20, 157
- degradation of network performance 106, 110, 142, 149
- delay period 113, 123, 124
- delays
 - in network services 110, 149
 - at system startup 126
- Descending command 95, 157
- descending order, sorting routing information in 95
- destination network
 - network number or range for 91
 - not in routing table 100
 - path to
 - exceeded routing distance 100
 - in routing table 91–92
 - routing distance to 67, 91
 - routing information for 91
 - zone name for 91
- Detailed command 86, 93, 157
- detailed view 85–86 (fig.), 93
- device
 - adding, to existing network 142
 - default zone for 151
 - hiding 43–46 (fig.), 83, 114–115
 - maximum, on network 33, 140, 142, 150–151
 - problem reproduced on, after
 - disconnecting from network 106
 - problems with
 - across half-routing link, in Chooser intermittently 122
 - cannot communicate with another device 106
 - in device list intermittently 109, 122

- hidden, in Chooser on computers
 - on network from which it is hidden 114–115
- on hidden network, in Chooser 123
- hidden from wrong port 115
- hiding, configured improperly 114–115
- incorrect network number or range for 81
- infected by virus 110
- intermittent access to 109
- malfunctioning 106, 107, 114
- maximum, exceeded 107, 109, 110
- missing 108
- more than 15 hops away 116, 120
- none of those across half-routing link in Chooser 121
- none of those across tunnel in Chooser 120
- none on network connected to router in Chooser 125
- none on part of internet in Chooser 127
- not in Chooser on computers on network 115–116
- not that selected 114
- only those in network found first in Chooser 116
- should be in same zone as another device, but is not 113
- system software conflicts on 110
- in wrong zone 113
- redundant path to 114
- removing, from list of hidden devices 82
- restarting all, on network 81
- selecting, in Chooser 152
- startup 81
- in zone 151–152
- device drivers incompatible 110
- device hiding 43–46 (fig.), 83, 114–115
- device-level security 43
- device list changes intermittently 108
- device name
 - acquiring, for device list 99

- conflicts in zone 114
- incorrect 114
- wildcard character in 131, 133
- device type 45–46, 133
- Device Type pop-up menu 45
- Device Type text box 45
- diagnosing and solving problems 106–108. *See also* troubleshooting
- DialUp access method 18, 21, 48–49, 132
- DialUp port. *See* half-routing port
- DialUp Port Info dialog box
 - when answering to establish connection 52–53
 - when calling back to establish connection 54–55
- configuring half-routing port in 48–49
- when originating connection 50–52
- selecting
 - automatic reconnection in 51
 - mode in 50
 - modem in 51, 53
 - tone or pulse dialing in 51
- specifying
 - options for 64
 - password in 50–51, 53, 54–55
 - phone number in 51, 55
 - retries in 51
- distance. *See* routing distance
- dollar sign (\$) character 36

E

- Easy Install dialog box 7–8, 9
- Edit menu 156–157
- ellipsis (...) 93
- encapsulating AppleTalk packets 59
- equal sign (=) character 19, 131, 133
- error messages
 - in Router Manager
 - for the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension 128
 - for the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension 128
 - when creating setup document 130, 131–134

- general 105, 128
- when insufficient memory available
 - for Router Manager 129–131
- when opening Router Manager 129
- when router is not running 131–134
- when router is running 105, 138
- when setting up router 105, 125
- when starting router 134–137
- in Router Log 111–112 (fig.)
 - when activating port 127
 - at router startup 25, 127, 134
- errors. *See* cyclic redundancy check (CRC) errors; installation errors; network errors
- error statistics
 - for entire network 96–98, 148, 149
 - for ports 98, 100, 101, 122, 128
- Ethernet cable 126
- Ethernet cable terminator 126
- Ethernet network 13, 33, 122, 145, 150, 151
- Ethernet port
 - access methods for 18
 - activating 40
 - AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension and 2, 18
 - Basic Connectivity Package and 2
 - built-in 13
 - configuring 21, 38–42
 - deactivating 40
 - default zone for 42
 - EtherTalk access method for 18, 21, 38–42
 - EtherTalk connection for 6, 10, 15
 - as forwarding port 92
 - hiding devices on 43–46 (fig.)
 - IP Tunnel access method for 2, 18
 - on network interface card 13
 - as nonseed port 39
 - port description for 39
 - Port Info dialog box for 38–42
 - as seed port 39
 - zone list for 40, 41, 42
 - zone names for 40, 41–42
- EtherTalk access method 18, 21, 38–42

- EtherTalk network. *See* Ethernet network
- EtherTalk Phase 2 18
- EtherTalk port 38–42, 92. *See also* Ethernet port
- EtherTalk Port Info dialog box
 - adding zone name to zone list in 40, 41
 - assigning network range in 39
 - changing network range in 81
 - changing zone list in 82–83
 - configuring EtherTalk port in 38–42 (fig.)
 - designating port as
 - nonseed port 39
 - seed port 39–42
 - removing zone name from zone list in 40, 42
 - renaming zone in 40, 41
 - setting default zone in 40, 42
- EtherTalk version 6
- Export Data command 102, 156
- exporting network information and port statistics 102, 156
- exterior router. *See also* half-router; router
 - allowing routing distances greater than 15 hops 67–68
 - answering call from, to establish connection 52–53
 - calling, to establish connection 50–52
 - calling back, to establish connection and 54–55
- clustering remapped network numbers 65–66
- configuring each, to remap network numbers 42
- connecting
 - networks through foreign network system 140, 143
 - remote networks 140, 141, 143
- defined 58 (fig.), 59
- detecting loops 62–63, 68, 148
- forwarding packets over backup paths 69–70
- function of 59
- half-routing and 50

exterior router (*continued*)

hiding networks 72

originating connection 50–52

problems with

connection broken 121

detected loop and deactivated port
119, 120, 124

failed to detect loop 125

half-routing link, unable to establish
118

hidden network 119, 120

modem configurations incompatible
121

modem scripts, wrong 121

no zones or devices across half-
routing link in Chooser 121

no zones or devices across tunnel in
Chooser 120

password invalid 121

phone line noisy and modem broke
connection 121

phone line noisy and modem
reduced transmission rate 122

phone number incorrect 121

sending packets over backup path
and primary path available 124

traffic excessive 122

zones or devices across half-routing
link in Chooser intermittently 122

remapping remote network numbers
62–63

sending routing information for only
its local internet 59

tunneling and 59–60

weighting hop counts 70–71

F

File menu 156

file servers 144, 148–149, 152

floppy disk drive 7

foreign network system

access method for 21

address in 92

as backbone network 145

exterior router and 58 (fig.), 59

packets for 59

tunneling and 57, 59–60, 140

tunneling port and 21

forwarding port 91–92 (fig.), 93, 94, 119

forwarding router 59, 92

fully connected tunnel 59–60 (fig.)

G

Get Zones dialog box 37, 41

graphs, specifying time period shown in
97, 98

“Graphs show data for the past” pop-up
menu 97, 98

H

half-router. *See also* exterior router; router

answering to establish connection 53

calling back to establish connection 54

calling to establish connection 50

defined 47

in half-routing link 140

originating connection 50

problems with

connection broken 121

half-routing link, unable to establish
118

modem configurations incompatible
121

modem scripts, wrong 121

no zones or devices across half-
routing link in Chooser 121

password invalid 121

phone line noisy and modem broke
connection 121

phone line noisy and modem
reduced transmission rate 122

phone number incorrect 121

traffic excessive 122

zones or devices across half-routing
link in Chooser intermittently 122

half-routing 3, 47

half-routing link. *See also* point-to-point
link

allowing routing distance greater than
15 hops on 115, 118, 120

connecting through 143

exterior router and 59

general 3, 140

problems establishing 118

problems on 121, 122

remapping network numbers on 116

tunneling and 57

using password on 50, 53, 54

half-routing port. *See also* tunneling port

access methods for 21, 48

activating 52, 121, 123, 124

AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension
and 3, 47

as backup path 69–70, 146

Basic Connectivity Package and 2

clustering remapped network numbers
on 65–67, 91

configuring 48–55

connection

answering to establish, through 52–53

calling back to establish, through
54–55

calling to establish, through 50–52

originating, through 50–52

deactivated at router startup to prevent
loop 62–63, 119, 120, 124, 148

deactivating 52, 119, 121, 123, 125

DialUp access method for 18, 21,
48–49, 132

DialUp Port Info dialog box for 48–55

as forwarding port 92

hiding networks on 72–74 (fig.), 84

hop count on

reducing 67–68, 115, 118, 120

weighting 70–71, 146

problems with

clustering remapped network

numbers on 123, 125

configured improperly 118, 121

is not forwarding port 119

- loop exists on 125
- password for, invalid 118, 121
- phone number for, incorrect 118, 121
- remapping remote network numbers on 116, 119, 119, 120, 148
- reconnecting automatically through 51
- reducing traffic on 69–70, 70–71, 146
- redundant paths on 69–71, 148
- remapping remote network numbers on 62–64, 91, 148
- resetting 121
- routing distance
 - greater than 15 hops, allowing on 67–68, 115, 118, 120
 - increasing, through, 69, 70–71, 146
- selecting
 - continuous retries 51
 - limited retries 51
 - mode for 50, 52, 54
 - modem for 51, 53, 121
 - pulse dialing 51
 - tone dialing 51
- specifying
 - caller's password for 50–51, 53, 54–55
 - phone number of calling router 55
 - phone number to call 51
 - port description for 49
- wide area routing options for 61–74
- hard disk 6, 7–8, 10, 12
- hardware 6
- Hexadecimal command 86, 93, 157
- hexadecimal number
 - network number specified as 36, 86, 93
 - network range specified as 39, 86, 93
 - numeric display format 86, 93
- Hide Devices dialog box 44, 83
- Hide pop-up menu 45, 73
- hiding
 - devices 43–46 (fig.), 83, 114–115
 - networks 72–74 (fig.), 84
- high-speed networks 145, 146
- hop count 67
- Hop Count Exceeded error 100
- hop-count reduction 67–68, 115, 118, 120

- hop-count weighting 69, 70–71, 116
- hops. *See also* routing distance
 - defined 67 (fig.)
 - maximum number of 68, 71
 - maximum routing distance of 15, exceeded 63, 71, 100, 110, 115, 116, 118, 119, 120
 - to network in cluster 66
 - reducing number of, to server 110
 - routing distance greater than 15 67–68, 115, 118, 120

I, J, K

- identifying networks on internet 33–34, 149–150
- incoming traffic 99, 101
- “Increase routing distance by” text box 71
- installation errors 125
- Installer disks 6, 7–9
- installing Basic Connectivity Package. *See also* router software, installing
 - selected software 9–11
 - on startup disk 7–9
 - system requirements for 6
 - upgrading from version 2.0 11–12
- intermittent access to network services and devices 109
- internet routing, errors in 81
- internets. *See also* AppleTalk internets; networks
 - defined 2, 140
 - device-level security for 43–46 (fig.)
 - exterior routers and 59, 65
 - hiding
 - devices on 43–46 (fig.), 83, 114–115
 - networks in 72–74 (fig.), 84
 - layouts of
 - general 142–149 (fig.)
 - for optimal performance 148–149
 - map of 34, 150
 - maximum number of
 - networks on 25, 151
 - zones on 26, 151–153 (fig.)
 - network identification on 33–34

- network services on, balancing 152
- number of networks and zones on 90
- performance of, optimizing 145, 148–149
- planning 148–149
- port statistics for 98–99
- problems with
 - device hiding on 114–115
 - general 112–119, 119–125
 - having conflicting network numbers or ranges 62
- reasons for creating 140, 142
- redundant paths between 62–63, 122
- router's location in 142–144 (fig.)
- routing distance across 68
- routing information for 59, 65, 90
- solving problems with 106–108
- traffic on 148–149, 152, 153
- tunneling and 57–59 (fig.)
- types of 21
- zones in, listing 37
- IP Tunnel access method 2, 18

L

- LANs. *See* local area networks
- “Limit to” text box 51
- Line Graph command 97–98, 157
- line graph, displaying router statistics as 96, 97–98
- local area networks (LANs) 2, 43, 57
- Local Net Setup Conflict 100
- local networks 140–141, 142
- LocalTalk access method
 - for AppleTalk port 21
 - configuring 35–37, 132
 - for modem port 18, 35, 132
 - Port Info dialog box for 20, 35–37
 - for printer port 18, 35, 132
- LocalTalk Built-In connection 14, 15
- LocalTalk connection 14, 15
- LocalTalk network
 - connecting 13
 - to modem port 13, 15
 - to printer port 13
 - to router Macintosh when on 13

LocalTalk network (*continued*)

- devices on, maximum 140
 - network number for 33
 - zone for 34, 151
 - zone name for 34, 151
- LocalTalk port
- activating 36
 - Basic Connectivity Package and 2
 - configuring 35–37, 43–46, 81–83
 - deactivating 36
 - designating
 - as nonseed port 35–36, 39, 18, 136, 137
 - as seed port 32, 34, 35–37, 39–42, 82, 83, 117
 - as forwarding port 92
 - hiding devices on 43–46 (fig.), 83
 - network number and 35–36, 81–82
 - as nonseed port 35–36
 - port description for 35
 - Port Info dialog box for 20, 35–37
 - as seed port 35–36, 37
 - zone name and 35–36, 37, 82–83
- LocalTalk Port Info dialog box
- assigning network number in 36
 - assigning zone name in 36, 37
 - changing network number in 81
 - changing zone name in 82–83
 - configuring LocalTalk port in 20, 35–37 (fig.)
 - designating port as
 - nonseed port 35–36
 - seed port 35–36
- loop. *See* routing loop
- lower-speed networks 146

M

- Macintosh computer 6, 13
- Macintosh Portable computer 6
- Macintosh PowerBook computer 6
- Macintosh Quadra 13
- maximum devices on network
 - allowed 33, 140, 142, 150–151
 - exceeded 107, 109, 110
- maximum networks connected to router 13

- maximum routing distance
 - allowed 68
 - exceeded 63, 71, 100, 115, 116, 118, 119, 120
- maximum size
 - of routing table 25–26, 100, 117
 - of zone table 26, 117
- maximum zones in list 34
- memory
 - insufficient for router 125, 135
 - insufficient for Router Manager 129–131
 - for programs running concurrently 25, 26, 129
 - required for router software 6
 - for routing table 26
 - for zone table 26
- menus in Router Manager
 - Control 158
 - Edit 156–157
 - File 156
 - View 157
 - Windows 159
- messages. *See* error messages
- missing devices 108
- missing network 115, 117–119
- modem
 - asynchronous 18, 51, 53
 - configurations incompatible 121
 - connecting remote networks 140, 143
 - for DialUp access method 18
 - with faster data transmission rate 122
 - in half-routing link 140
 - in point-to-point links 2, 47
 - reconnecting automatically 51
 - reduced data transmission rate 122
 - resetting 121
 - scripts 121
 - selecting 51
 - unable to
 - maintain connection 121
 - reestablish connection 121
 - using to originate connection 50–52
- modem port
 - access methods for 18, 132

- configuring LocalTalk access method for 35–37
- connecting LocalTalk network to 13
- connecting modem to 51
- DialUp access method for 18, 48–49, 132
- LocalTalk access method for 18, 35–37, 132
- LocalTalk connection for 15
- router and 13, 18
- monitoring router
 - errors, on port 99 (fig.), 100
 - errors, on router 99 (fig.), 100
- network
 - activity 96–98
 - reliability 96–98
 - routing information 90–95
 - traffic 96–98
- port statistics 98–101 (fig.)
- router statistics 96–98, 101
- traffic, on port 99–100 (fig.)
- traffic, on router 99–100 (fig.)

N

- Name LookUps Out 100
- Name Requests In 99
- Name text box 46
- native internets 57. *See also* AppleTalk internets
- native networks 57. *See also* AppleTalk networks
- network activity. *See also* traffic
 - balancing levels of 144, 148–149
 - displayed in Router Statistics window
 - as bar graph 97
 - current level of 96–97, 149
 - as line graph 97–98
 - monitoring levels of 96–97, 149
- network address 134, 141
- network cabling system 6
- network connection, break in 108, 125, 144
- network connector 109
- Network Control panel
 - AppleTalk connections available in 14, 15
 - changing router's zone in 76

- current AppleTalk connection in 132, 135
- designating AppleTalk connection as user port in 14–16, 135
- router status indicator in 9 (fig.), 28, 79
- selecting router's zone in 15–16
- network errors
 - displayed in Router Statistics window
 - as bar graph 97
 - current rate of 96–97
 - as line graph 97–98
 - on scale of 96
 - monitoring 100, 111, 122, 149
 - statistics for various types of, resetting 101
 - types of, in Port Statistics window 100
- network hiding
 - configuring 72–74 (fig.), 84, 123
 - problems with 116, 119, 120, 123
- network information
 - conflicting 138
 - exporting 102, 156
 - printing 103
 - propagating wrong 127
- Network Information command 90, 159
- Network Information window. *See also* routing information; routing table
 - detailed view of 93
 - display of routing information in 90, 91
 - displaying 90 (fig.)
 - exporting information in 102, 156
 - forwarding port listed in 119
 - freezing display temporarily in 127
 - memory requirements of 130
 - numeric display format in 93
 - printing information in 103
 - problems in
 - forwarding port not tunneling port 119
 - information redraws too frequently 127
 - networks not listed 60, 117–119
 - no devices on network listed 125
 - no zones on network listed 125
 - zones not listed 117–119
 - routing table in 90–91 (fig.), 93, 94, 95
 - saving information in 102
 - selecting 159
 - sorting routing information in 94–95
 - summary view of 93
 - view of 90
- network interface card 7, 13, 108, 132, 135, 140
- network-level security 60, 72
- network number. *See also* network range
 - acquiring from seed router 32, 36, 81, 82
 - for AppleTalk network 33, 36, 81
 - assigning 34, 36, 149–150
 - changing 81–82
 - clustering remapped 65–67 (fig.), 91
 - configuring seed port and 34, 35–36
 - as decimal number 36, 86, 93
 - defined 33
 - in detailed view 93
 - as hexadecimal number 36, 86, 93
 - LocalTalk network and 33
 - LocalTalk port and 35–36
 - network hiding and 74
 - in network range 150
 - for nonseed port 36
 - numeric display format for 86, 93
 - obtaining from seed router 32, 36, 81, 82
 - problems with
 - conflicting 34, 100, 116, 132, 138
 - incorrect 81, 136
 - network unable to obtain 118
 - for unknown network in routing table 125
 - remapping range for 62
 - remapping remote 62–64, 68, 91, 148
 - reserving 150
 - in routing table entries 81, 91
 - for seed port 35
 - specifying 86, 149–150
 - unique in internet 36
- network-numbering conflicts 25, 62–63, 100, 150
- network-numbering scheme, choosing 149–150 (fig.)
- network-number remapping
 - allowing routing distances greater than 15 hops and 68, 115, 118
 - avoiding redundant paths and 62–63, 148
 - clustering remapped network numbers 65–67 (fig.), 91
 - and deactivation of port at router startup to prevent loop 62–63
 - and deactivation of port when router is running to prevent loop 62–63, 119, 120, 124, 148
 - and hop-count reduction 68
 - and loop 63
 - problems with
 - configured improperly 116
 - device name not in Chooser due to 116
 - forwarding port not tunneling port due to 119
 - tunneling port not activated due to 124
 - unknown networks in routing table due to 125
 - zones or devices across tunnel not in Chooser due to 120
 - zones or networks not in Network Information window due to 119
 - to resolve numbering conflicts 62–64
 - and routing table 91
 - specifying a remapping range 62, 64
 - turning on/off 64
- Network Number text box 36
- network range. *See also* network number
 - acquiring from seed router 32, 39, 81, 82
 - for AppleTalk network 33, 39, 81
 - assigning 34, 39, 150–151
 - changing 81–82, 123, 135, 151
 - clustering remapped 65–66 (fig.)
 - configuring seed port and 34, 39
 - consisting of one network number 39
 - as decimal number 39, 86, 93
 - defined 33
 - in detailed view 93

- network range (*continued*)
 - EtherTalk network and 33
 - EtherTalk port and 39
 - expanding 151
 - as hexadecimal number 39, 86, 93
 - maximum devices on network and 33
 - network hiding and 74
 - for nonseed port 39
 - numeric display format for 86, 93
 - obtaining from seed router 32, 39, 81, 82
 - problems with
 - conflicting 34, 100, 138
 - default zone for, incorrect 137
 - incorrect 81, 136
 - zone list for, incorrect 137
 - zone name for, incorrect 136, 137
 - remapping range for 62, 65
 - remapping remote 62–64, 65, 91, 148
 - in routing table entries 81, 91
 - for seed port 39
 - size of 150–151
 - sorting routing table by 94
 - specifying 86, 150–151 (fig.)
 - TokenTalk network and 33
 - TokenTalk port and 39
 - unique in internet 39
 - “Network range starting with” text box 74
 - Network Range text box 39
 - Network Reliability 96
 - network routing information. *See* routing information
 - networks. *See also* AppleTalk networks; backbone networks; internets
 - adding 150
 - adding devices to existing 142
 - affected by problem 106–107
 - AppleTalk connections corresponding to 15
 - in cluster 67
 - combining 117
 - connecting
 - to backbone network 140–141 (fig.), 144–145 (fig.)
 - with different transmission rates 146
 - of different types 13, 140, 142, 145, 146
 - existing 140–141, 142, 150
 - local 140–141, 142
 - not physically contiguous 144
 - remote 140–141, 142
 - to router 13
 - through tunnel 2, 57–59, 140, 143
 - devices on
 - maximum allowed 33, 140, 150–151
 - number of 142
 - with different data transmission rates 146
 - disconnecting, from devices 106
 - error statistics for 149
 - extending 140, 142
 - hiding devices on 43–46 (fig.)
 - identifying, on internet 33–34
 - isolating traffic on 153
 - layouts of 144, 146, 147
 - maximum, connected to router 13
 - more than one zone in 93
 - in network address 92
 - number of, in internet 90
 - paths to destination 91–92, 100, 115, 118, 146
 - performance of
 - degradation of 106, 110, 142, 149
 - improving 140, 142, 143, 145, 147, 148–149, 153
 - planning for growth 142, 150–151
 - problems with
 - cable length of, maximum exceeded 107, 109
 - cannot obtain network number for 118
 - in cluster, disconnected or down 67, 123
 - default zone for, incorrect 137
 - devices on, maximum exceeded 107, 109, 110
 - forwarding port for, not tunneling port 119
 - general 106, 107, 108–110, 126, 132, 135
 - missing 115, 117–119
 - not in Network Information window 60, 117–119
 - not in routing table 117
 - not terminated properly 109
 - redundant paths between 119, 120, 123, 124
 - routing distance to, exceeds 15 hops 118, 119, 120
 - seed router for, none configured 117
 - topology of 107, 109, 114, 119, 120, 123, 124, 125
 - traffic on, excessive 107, 110, 122, 142, 149
 - unknown 100, 125
 - users can’t access 108
 - wrong, in Router Log 127
 - zone list for, incorrect 137
 - zone name for, incorrect 136, 137
 - redundant paths between 44, 69, 70–71, 140, 143, 146, 147–148
 - reliability of 96–98, 143, 147, 149
 - removing, from list of hidden networks 84
 - representing as cluster 65
 - restarting all devices on 81
 - routers, placing in 142
 - routing information for 90–95
 - seed router for
 - configuring 32–34
 - defined 32
 - more than one 32
 - subdividing 109, 110, 142, 143, 149
 - traffic on
 - balancing levels of 144, 148–149
 - isolating 142, 153
 - monitoring levels of 149
 - types of 148
 - zone list for
 - acquiring from seed router 83
 - assigning 39, 40, 41
 - changing 82–83
 - defined 34

- zone name for
 - acquiring from seed router 83
 - assigning 34, 36, 37
 - changing 82–83
 - default 42, 83
 - zones, dividing into 142, 151–153 (fig.)
 - network services
 - access to
 - facilitating 142, 152
 - interrupting 78, 123, 128, 134, 151
 - not interrupted by breaks in networks 144
 - balancing, on internet 148, 152
 - concurrent 6, 110
 - problems with
 - delays in 110, 149
 - inaccessible 81, 106, 135
 - insufficient 110
 - intermittent access to 106, 109
 - not updated in Chooser 16
 - routing distances to, excessive 110
 - used inappropriately 110
 - shared 140, 142, 149, 152
 - shorter paths to 144, 149
 - traffic generated by usage of 148, 149, 152–153
 - unique names for 82
 - user port for 14
 - zone for 14, 16
 - network system, faster 110, 122
 - network types 13, 21, 33, 140, 142, 145, 146
 - New command 19, 156
 - next router 59, 91, 92, 93
 - node 59, 99
 - node address 91, 92
 - node identifier (node ID), 13, 92, 135
 - nondedicated router 6
 - nonseed port
 - configuring 35–36, 39, 117, 136, 137
 - general 32–33 (fig.)
 - obtaining information for network connected to 91
 - nonseed router
 - configuring router as 32–33 (fig.)
 - defined 32
 - obtaining network information from seed router 36, 39, 91
 - starting 136
 - numeric display format, setting 86, 93
- ## O
- Open command 80, 156
 - opening
 - DialUp Port Info dialog box 48
 - Installer program 7
 - Network control panel 14
 - Router desk accessory 11
 - Router Log 112
 - Router Manager 19, 27, 29, 77, 88, 129
 - Router Setup window 11
 - Router 2.0 as setup document 12
 - setup documents 18, 77, 80
 - startup document 19, 23
 - windows 29, 89, 96, 98, 102
 - Options dialog box
 - and allowing routing distances greater than 15 hops 68
 - and clustering remapped network numbers 66
 - and designating port as backup path 69–70 (fig.)
 - and hiding networks 73–74 (fig.), 123
 - and increasing routing distance through port 71 (fig.)
 - and remapping remote network numbers 64 (fig.)
 - removing network from list of hidden networks 84, 123
 - originating a connection 50–52, 121
 - outgoing traffic 99–100, 101
- ## P
- Packet Buffer Overflow error 100, 122
 - packets. *See also* AppleTalk packets
 - forwarding, on backup path 69
 - general 59, 96, 98, 99, 101
 - per second, maximum displayed 98
 - Packets In 99, 101
 - Packets Out 99, 101
 - Packets Routed 96
 - Page Setup command 156
 - partially connected tunnel 59–60 (fig.)
 - password. *See* administrator's password; caller's password
 - password protection
 - removing 88
 - specifying 27
 - Password text box
 - for caller's password 50, 53, 54–55
 - when entering administrator's password 77
 - when setting administrator's password 27, 87
 - path to destination network 91–92, 100, 115, 118, 146
 - performance, network
 - degradation of 106, 110, 142, 149
 - improving 140, 142, 143, 145, 147, 148–149, 153
 - phone number 51, 55, 92, 118, 121
 - Phone Number text box 51, 55
 - physical port. *See* port
 - point-to-point link 2, 3, 21, 47. *See also* half-routing link
 - port. *See also* AppleTalk port; EtherTalk port; DialUp port; half-routing port; LocalTalk port; modem port; printer port; router port; seed port; TokenTalk port; tunneling port; user port
 - access methods for 18, 19–20, 86, 91, 132
 - activating
 - general 22, 25, 29, 78
 - only on which no errors occur 25
 - at router startup 131
 - unable to, because of conflicting port information 138
 - configuring, general 18 (fig.), 21–22
 - current settings for 18 (fig.), 86
 - current status of 18, 86
 - deactivating 22, 29, 78

- port (*continued*)
 - hiding devices from 45
 - identifying network connected to 21
 - inactive 25, 117, 138
 - not activated at router startup 127, 131
 - reconfiguring 131, 135
 - on router 18
 - statistics
 - for each port configured 98–100
 - totals for all ports configured 98–100
- port configuration. *See also* configuring
 - adding 80
 - Basic Connectivity Package and 2
 - changing 80–84, 112
 - displaying 20, 157
 - removing 84, 135
- port description
 - default 21
 - in detailed view of setup window 86
 - in DialUp Port Info dialog box 49
 - in EtherTalk Port Info dialog box 39
 - for forwarding port 91
 - in LocalTalk Port Info dialog box 35
 - optional 21
 - in setup document 18
 - in setup window 18 (fig.)
 - specifying 21
 - in startup document 19
 - in TokenTalk Port Info dialog box 39
- Port Description text box 21, 35, 39, 49
- Port Info dialog box
 - activating port in 22, 25, 78
 - changing port configuration in 80
 - changing port status in 22, 78
 - clearing 84
 - closing 78
 - configuring port in 20–22, 80
 - deactivating port in 22, 78
 - for DialUp access method 48–55
 - for EtherTalk access method 38–42
 - for half-routing port 64, 68, 69–70, 71, 73–74
 - for LocalTalk access method 20–22, 35–37 (fig.)
- name of physical port in 21
- opening 20, 78
- port information in 20
- printing information in 103
- specifying port description in 21
 - for TokenTalk access method 38–42
 - for tunneling port 64, 68, 69–70, 71, 73–74
- port statistics
 - for all configured ports 98–99 (fig.)
 - for each configured port 98–99 (fig.)
 - exporting 102
 - monitoring 98–100
 - printing 103
 - resetting 98, 101
 - saving 102
- Port Statistics command 98, 159
- Port Statistics window
 - Data Link Errors in 100, 128
 - date and time statistics last reset in 98–99 (fig.), 101
 - display of port statistics in 98–100 (fig.), 101
 - error statistics in 100, 149
 - exporting information in 102, 156
 - monitoring
 - network errors in 100
 - traffic in 99–100
 - opening 89, 98
- Packet Buffer Overflow in 100, 122, 128
- Packets In and Out in 99, 149
- printing information in 103
- resetting statistics in 98, 101
- saving information in 102
- selecting 159
- port status
 - changing
 - general 22, 25, 78
 - permanently 78
 - temporarily 78
 - current 18 (fig.)
 - default 22
 - in detailed view of setup window 86
 - inactive 25, 117, 138
 - in Router Log 25, 111
 - in setup document 18
 - in setup window 18 (fig.)
 - in startup document 19
- Preferences folder 112
- preventing others from
 - changing router's status 27
 - changing setup documents 27
 - making changes in Router Manager 27
 - opening Router Manager 27
- primary path
 - ensuring router uses only 70, 124
 - reactivation of, not detected 124
 - unavailable 69
- Print command 103, 156
- printer port
 - access methods for 18, 132
 - configuring LocalTalk access method for 35–37
 - connecting LocalTalk network to 13
 - connecting modem to 51
 - DialUp access method for 18, 48–49, 132
 - LocalTalk access method for 18, 35–37, 132
 - LocalTalk Built-In connection for 15
 - router and 13, 18
- printing
 - network information 103
 - port information 103
 - port statistics 103
 - Router Log 103
 - router setup 103
 - routing information 156
- print server 108, 110, 113
- problems. *See also* error messages; troubleshooting
 - cause of, identifying 107
 - diagnosing 106–108
 - hardware 106, 107
 - internet 112–119
 - isolating 106–107
 - location of 106–107
 - network 106, 107, 108–110

- router 107, 111–112 (fig.), 125–128
- scope of 106–107
- software 106, 107
- solving 106–108
- symptoms of 106
- verifying 107, 112
- wide area internet 119–125
- programs running concurrently on router
 - Macintosh 25, 26
- protocol family 57
- pulse dialing 50–51 (fig.), 55

Q

- Quit command 29, 156
- quitting
 - application programs, other 8
 - Router Manager 27, 29

R

- random-access memory (RAM) 6. *See also* memory
- reclustering, forcing 123, 125
- redundant path. *See also* backup path;
routing loop
 - activating ports and 62–63
 - avoiding, with network-number remapping 62–63 (fig.), 119, 148
 - causing traffic to traverse 70
 - creating 147–148 (fig.)
 - deactivating ports and 63, 119, 148
 - defined 62
 - device hiding and 44, 114
 - eliminating 114, 123, 146
 - between internets 62–63, 122
 - between networks 44, 69, 70–71, 119, 120, 123, 124, 140, 143, 146, 147–148
 - network hiding and 123
 - routing distance and 69, 70, 119, 120, 140, 146, 147, 148
 - with same routing distance and troubleshooting 148
- using
 - with high data transmission rate 122, 140, 146
 - to improve internet reliability 147
 - to minimize traffic on a tunneling port 69–71
- Reenter Password text box
 - for caller's password 51, 53, 55
 - when setting administrator's password 27, 87
- reinstalling router software 128, 129, 131
- remapping. *See also* network-number remapping
 - remote network numbers 62–64, 65, 91
 - remote network ranges 62–64, 65, 91
 - to resolve numbering conflicts 62–64
- remapping range
 - conflicts with local network range 116
 - specifying 62, 64
- “Remap remote network numbers into range” text box 64
- remote internets 47, 65
- Remote Net Range Conflict 100
- remote network numbers, remapping 62–64, 65, 91
- remote network ranges, remapping 62–64, 65, 91
- remote networks 140–141, 142
- Remove Password command 88, 158
- Reset Statistics command 101, 158
- Restart Status On/Off 11
- Revert to Saved command 156
- Router 2.0 12
- router. *See also* Apple Internet Router;
exterior router; forwarding router;
half-router; next router; nonseed
router; router Macintosh; seed
router
 - activity levels 96, 101
 - and AppleTalk Phase 2 compatibility 6
 - assigning devices to default zone 42
 - background operation of 29
 - broadcasting routing table 65
 - configuring
 - as nonseed router 32–33 (fig.)
 - as seed router 32–34 (fig.), 36, 39, 82, 83
 - for startup 22–26 (fig.), 75, 85

- connecting
 - local networks 140, 141, 142
 - networks of different types 140, 142
 - networks to backbone 140, 141, 143
- date and time last restarted 96, 98
- dedicated 6
- error messages, in Router Manager
 - general 105, 128
 - memory, insufficient 129–131
 - when opening router 129
 - when router is not running 131–134
 - when router is running 138
 - when starting router 134–137
- errors logged in Router Log 25, 111–112 (fig.)
- extending existing network 140, 142
- extensions. *See* AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension; AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension
- forwarding packets
 - to destination networks 91–92
 - over redundant paths 69
- function of 140–142 (fig.)
- hiding devices on, when redundant paths exist 43
- and hop count 67, 140, 144
- isolating traffic on different parts of internet 142, 143
- maintaining logical map of networks 140
- maximum networks connected to 13
- minimizing routing distances 143
- monitoring
 - network errors on 100, 149
 - network information for 90–95
 - network reliability for 96–98, 149
 - operation of 89, 111–112 (fig.)
 - port statistics for 98–101 (fig.), 149
 - router statistics for 101
 - traffic through 96–98, 99–100
- more than one, on network 32
- name 19, 131
- name lookups generated by 100
- name requests received by 99, 100
- network connected to 91
- network errors on, monitoring 100

- router (*continued*)
 - nondedicated 6
 - only, on network 16
 - operation, monitoring information
 - about 111–112 (fig.)
 - packets discarded by 100
 - performance, optimizing 6
 - preventing
 - changes to status of 27
 - startup 24
 - unnecessary cross-network traffic 144
 - primary path, used by 70, 124
 - problems with
 - AppleTalk Phase 2, does not support 100, 112
 - can't access AppleTalk network services 135
 - can't activate port for which no AppleTalk connection file in Extensions folder 131
 - can't set up, no AppleTalk connection files in Extensions folder 129
 - can't start 34, 111
 - can't update zone list 67
 - can't use port information for
 - AppleTalk connection not on router Macintosh 131
 - concurrent application program on 128
 - concurrent network service on 128
 - conflicting network number or range 136, 138
 - conflicting zone name or list 136, 137
 - errors in setup 112
 - errors that prevent startup 111
 - general 107, 111–112, 125–128
 - hidden device 115
 - network number unobtainable 118
 - no seed router on network 136
 - no zones or devices on directly connected network accessible on other networks 125
 - no zones or devices on part of internet in Chooser on computers on directly connected networks 127
 - setup errors 125
 - software installation errors 125
 - stopping, to solve 126
 - reconfiguring 75
 - recording information in Router Log 111–112
 - and redundant paths 42–43 (fig.), 143, 146, 147, 148
 - setting up 17–27, 107
 - setup
 - errors in 112
 - modifying 112
 - shutting down Macintosh 13, 126
 - starting
 - error messages when 134–137
 - errors that prevent 111
 - general 16, 17, 23, 28–29, 75, 126, 158
 - at system startup 9, 24
 - startup document for 19, 23–24
 - statistics for all ports on 98–99 (fig.)
 - status of, changing 27, 77
 - stopping
 - and clearing routing information 83, 113, 124
 - general 75, 79, 81, 158
 - to increase network range 151
 - resetting statistics and 98
 - to solve problems with 126
 - subdividing network with 108, 110, 142, 149
 - system requirements for 6
 - traffic congestion, avoiding 144, 149
 - traffic on, monitoring 99–100
 - zones, dividing network into 142
 - Router command 11
 - Router desk accessory 11–12
 - Router Log
 - clearing 112, 156
 - displaying 89, 111, 159
 - errors logged in 25, 111 (fig.)
 - memory insufficient for 130
 - memory requirements of 130
 - monitoring information about router
 - operation in 111–112 (fig.)
 - port status logged in 25, 111
 - printing information in 103
 - router status logged in 111
 - selecting 159
 - as text document 112
 - verifying problems with router in 107, 111–112
 - Router Log command 111–112, 159
 - router Macintosh. *See also* router
 - AppleTalk connection for 14–16, 76
 - concurrent application programs on 129, 135
 - conflicting node ID for 13
 - connecting
 - Ethernet networks to 13
 - LocalTalk networks to 13
 - network types other than LocalTalk to 13
 - Token Ring networks to 13
 - dedicated 6
 - Ethernet port on 6, 10, 13, 18
 - expansion slots in 13
 - installing router software for ports on 7–9
 - LocalTalk ports on 13
 - location of, in internet 115, 118, 142–144 (fig.), 149
 - memory in 26, 129, 130, 136
 - model of 6, 13
 - modem port on 13, 18
 - name of 19
 - network interface cards in 13
 - network services running concurrently
 - on 16, 78, 81
 - nondedicated 6
 - placing, in internet 115, 118, 142–144 (fig.), 149

- port on Apple Serial NB Card in 3
- ports on 13, 15, 18
- printer port on 13, 18
- problems with
 - AppleTalk connection selected as user port for, wrong 113
 - AppleTalk connection undefined 135
 - delays occurring at startup 126
 - disconnected from internet and zone name changed 113
 - general 107
 - hardware constraints 125
 - hardware malfunction 107, 125
 - memory, insufficient 129–131, 136
 - network connection, break in 125
 - network interface card moved to different slot in or removed from 132, 135
 - no other routers on network on current AppleTalk connection 133
 - packet transmission rate slow 128
 - providing concurrent network services 113
 - restarted, without delay period of ten minutes 113
 - setup document created on different 132
 - stopping, to solve 112, 126
 - unable to process all packets received 128
 - zone selected for, wrong 113
- restarting 112, 113, 126
- running concurrent application programs on 129
- shutting down 13, 29, 126
- starting router at startup 9, 24
- Token Ring port on 2, 6, 10, 18
- user port for 14–16
- zone for 15–16, 76
- Router Manager
 - activating ports in 75, 78
 - and Basic Connectivity Package 2
 - changing administrator's password for 87
 - changing router-startup options in 85
 - clearing Router Log in 112, 156–157
 - configuring
 - ports in 35–46, 48–55, 64, 66, 68, 69–70, 71, 73–74
 - router for startup in 22–25, 158
 - creating setup documents in 18–22
 - customizing view of setup window in 85–86, 157
 - deactivating ports in 75, 78
 - displaying Router Log in 111
 - entering password to open 77
 - error messages in 105. *See also* error messages, in Router Manager
 - exporting information in 102, 156
 - function of 2, 155
 - hexadecimal numbers in 36
 - installing 128
 - memory allocation for, increasing 129, 130
 - memory insufficient for 129–131
 - menus in
 - Control 158
 - Edit 156–157
 - File 156
 - View 157
 - Windows 159
 - modifying setup documents in 80–84, 112
 - monitoring
 - network activity in 96–98, 148–149
 - network errors in 96–98, 148, 149
 - network reliability in 96, 149
 - network routing information in 90–95, 157, 159
 - packets routed in 96, 149
 - port statistics in 98–100, 149, 159
 - Router Log in 111–112, 159
 - router operation in 89
 - router statistics in 96–98, 148–149, 157, 159
 - multiple setup documents
 - creating in 18, 85
 - opening in 18
 - selecting in 159
 - opening 19, 27, 29, 77, 129
 - preventing
 - conflicting network numbers and ranges on router's ports 34
 - others from making changes in 27
 - others from opening 27
 - printing information in 103
 - quitting 27, 29
 - removing password protection from 88, 158
 - resetting router and port statistics in 101, 158
 - selecting
 - startup document in 23–24, 85, 158
 - windows in 159
 - sorting routing table in 94–95
 - specifying administrator's password for 27, 158
 - starting router in 28–29, 158
 - stopping router in 79, 158
- Router Name text box 19
- router port 18. *See also* port
- router setup, for version 2.0 of AppleTalk Internet Router 11–12
- Router Setup command 11
- Router Setup window 11
- router software. *See also* Basic Connectivity Package
 - in Basic Connectivity Package 6
 - installing 6, 7–12, 107, 128, 129
 - reinstalling 27, 128, 129, 131
 - problems with 107
 - upgrading from AppleTalk Internet Router version 2.0 11–12
- router startup. *See also* starting router; startup document
 - activating only ports with no errors 25
 - canceling, if an error occurs 25, 85
 - configuring 22–26 (fig.)
 - errors at 25, 111–112 (fig.)
 - at Macintosh startup 24, 85
 - messages displayed at 134–137
 - options for 22–26 (fig.), 75, 77, 85
 - preventing, at Macintosh startup 24

- router startup (*continued*)
 - problems at
 - can't find startup document 134
 - can't start 134–137
 - current AppleTalk connection
 - undefined 135
 - error when installing AppleTalk
 - connection driver 135
 - interrupts current network services 134
 - port not activated at 127
 - tunneling port not activated at 124
 - status of ports at 25, 111–112 (fig.)
- router statistics
 - date and time last reset 96, 101
 - displaying as
 - bar graphs 96 (fig.), 97
 - line graphs 97–98 (fig.)
 - resetting 98, 101, 158
- Router Statistics command 96, 159
- Router Statistics window
 - date and time statistics last reset in 96 (fig.), 101
 - display of router statistics in 96–98 (fig.)
 - monitoring
 - Network Activity in 96, 149
 - Network Errors in 96, 149
 - Network Reliability in 96, 149
 - Packets Routed in 96, 149
 - opening 89, 96
 - period of time shown in graphs 97, 98
 - resetting statistics in 96, 101
 - selecting 159
 - throughput shown in graphs 98
- router status indicator 9 (fig.), 28, 79
- Router 2.0 12
- Router Version Mismatch error 100
- routing 22
- routing distance. *See also* hops
 - backbone network and 144, 145
 - between two networks connected to backbone 144
 - clustering remapped networks and 66
 - decreasing, through port 115, 118, 120
 - defined 67
 - in detailed view 93
 - greater than 15 hops, allowing 67–68 (fig.), 71, 115, 118, 120
 - increasing, through port 69, 70–71, 118, 146
 - internet layout and 146, 147
 - maximum allowed 68
 - measuring, in hops 67
 - minimizing 140, 143, 145
 - in Network Information window 91
 - problems with
 - maximum exceeded 63, 71, 100, 110, 115, 116, 118, 119, 120
 - network list incomplete in 117
 - redundant paths and 147, 148
 - routing packets over path with
 - longest 69
 - same 69
 - shortest 69, 140
 - in routing table 91
 - sorting routing table by 94
- routing information. *See also* Network Information window; routing table
 - for cluster 67
 - clustering and minimizing 65
 - for destination networks and zones 91–92
 - detailed view of 93, 157
 - displaying 90, 91, 157
 - displaying, only after received from seed router 91
 - exchanging 69
 - exporting 102, 156
 - monitoring 90–95
 - in Network Information window 90–95, 157
 - numeric display format of 93, 157
 - obtaining from seed router 36, 91
 - printing 156
 - received from other routers 91
 - in routing table 90 (fig.), 91–92, 94–95
 - sorting 94–95
 - summary view of 93, 157
 - updating 65, 91, 148
 - view of, choosing 90
- routing loop. *See also* redundant path
 - deactivating port if 63, 148
 - eliminating 148
 - hop-count reduction and 68
 - network-number remapping and 62–63
 - preventing activation of port if 62–63, 68, 119, 120, 124, 125, 148
 - router unable to detect, when clustering 63
- routing table. *See also* Network Information window; routing information
 - access method in 91
 - broadcasting 65
 - clearing obsolete information from 82, 113
 - clustering and 91
 - cluster represented in 65
 - defined 91
 - detailed view of 93
 - display of 90 (fig.), 95
 - entries 91, 94
 - exchanging 91
 - forwarding port in 91
 - freezing display of 95
 - hops in 91
 - increasing size of 25
 - information in 91–92
 - internal 91
 - maximum number of entries in 25–26
 - in Network Information window 90–91 (fig.), 93, 94, 95
 - network number or range in 81, 91
 - network-number remapping and 91
 - next router in 91
 - numeric display format of 93
 - paths to destination networks 91
 - preventing display update of 95
 - problems with
 - maximum size exceeded 100, 117
 - networks not listed in 100
 - overflow 100
 - unknown networks in 125

- routing distance in 91
 - routing information in 90 (fig.), 91–92, 94–95
 - size of
 - default 25
 - increasing 25
 - memory and 26
 - reducing 25
 - specifying maximum 25–26
 - sorting 94–95 (fig.)
 - summary view of 93
 - updating 91, 95, 113
 - view of, choosing 90
 - zone name or list in 82, 91
 - Routing Table Entries text box 26
 - Routing Table Overflow error 100
 - routing traffic 65
- S**
- Save As command 156
 - Save command 78, 156
 - saving, changes to setup document 78
 - seed port
 - configuring 32, 34, 35–37, 39–42, 82, 83, 118
 - conflicting port information for 117
 - deactivated because of conflicting port information 117
 - general 32–33 (fig.)
 - seed router
 - changing network number or range on 82
 - changing zone name or list on 83
 - configuring router as 32–34 (fig.), 36, 39, 82, 83
 - conflicting network number or range on 34, 116
 - defined 32
 - exchanging routing tables and 91
 - more than one for network 32, 82, 83
 - none on network 118, 136
 - obtaining network information from 36, 39, 91
 - serial port. *See* modem port; printer port
 - servers 144, 148–149, 152
 - Set Password command 27, 87, 158
 - Set Startup command 23, 24, 25, 158
 - Set Startup dialog box 23, 24, 25, 26
 - setup document. *See also* setup window; startup document
 - access methods in 19–20 (fig.)
 - canceling save if error in setup 22
 - can't save, no access privileges 133–134
 - configuring ports in 20, 21, 35–37, 38–42, 48–55, 78
 - corrupted 132, 135
 - created on different router Macintosh 132
 - creating
 - error messages displayed when 130, 131–134
 - general 2, 17–22, 79, 132, 135
 - multiple 85
 - defined 18
 - designating as 17, 23–24, 79, 85, 127, 134
 - information in 18 (fig.), 19
 - locked 133
 - modifying
 - general 27, 77, 79, 80–84
 - hidden devices, removing device from list 83
 - hidden networks, removing network from list 84
 - network number or range, changing 81–82
 - not possible when router is running 29
 - port configuration, adding or changing 80
 - port configuration, removing 84
 - stopping router and 75, 79
 - zone name or list, changing 82–83
 - name of 20
 - opening 18, 77, 80
 - port status in
 - changing 78
 - display of 18 (fig.), 19
 - preventing others from changing 27
 - removing port configuration from 135
 - Router 2.0 as 12
 - saving changes to 78
 - selecting, as startup document 17, 23–24, 79
 - unlocking 133
 - in Windows menu 159
 - setup window. *See also* setup document
 - configuring ports in 20, 21, 35–37, 38–42, 48–55, 78
 - creating setup document in 18 (fig.), 19–22
 - customizing view of 85–86, 157
 - detailed view of 85–86, 157
 - modifying setup document in 80–83
 - numeric display format for 86, 157
 - opening 89
 - printing information in 103
 - removing port configuration in 84
 - summary view of 85–86, 157
 - shutting down router Macintosh 13, 29, 126
 - Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) 89
 - “Sort by” pop-up menu 94 (fig.)
 - sort direction 95
 - sort key 94–95
 - starting router. *See also* router startup; startup document
 - error messages when 134–137
 - errors that prevent 111
 - general 16, 17, 23, 28–29, 75, 126
 - at system startup 9, 24
 - Start Router command 28, 79, 158
 - startup disk 7–9, 10–11, 11–12, 27, 125, 129, 134
 - startup document. *See also* setup document; starting router; startup document
 - current settings for each configured port in 19
 - current status of each configured port in 19
 - defined 19, 23

- startup document (*continued*)
 - designating setup document as 17, 23–24, 79, 85, 127, 134
 - information in 19
 - modifying 79, 112
 - opening with Router Manager 19
 - opening setup window for 89
 - port description in 19
 - problems with
 - deleted from startup disk 134
 - router can't find 134
 - wrong setup document designated as 127
 - at router startup 24
 - selecting 17, 23–24, 79, 85, 127, 134
 - in Windows menu 159
- startup options for router, specifying 22–26 (fig.), 75, 77, 85
- statistics. *See* port statistics; router statistics
- stopping router
 - and clearing routing information 83, 113, 124
 - general 75, 79, 81, 158
 - resetting statistics and 98
 - to increase network range 151
 - to solve problems with 112, 126
- Stop Router command 28, 79, 158
- Summary command 86, 93, 157
- summary view 85–86 (fig.), 93
- system requirements for router software 6
- system software version 7.0 6, 7
- system startup 24

T

- tab-delimited text 102, 156
- T-connector, termination of 126
- TCP/IP network 2, 57
- text documents 102, 112, 156
- thin coaxial cable 126
- Throughput pop-up menu 98
- time statistics last reset 96, 101
- Token Ring network 13, 33, 145, 150, 151
- Token Ring port
 - access methods for 18

- activating 40
- AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension and 2, 18
- Basic Connectivity Package and 2
- configuring 21, 38–42
- deactivating 40
- default zone for 42
- as forwarding port 92
- hiding devices on 43–46 (fig.)
- IP Tunnel access method for 2, 18
- as nonseed port 39
- port description for 39
- Port Info dialog box for 38–42
- as seed port 39
- TokenTalk access method for 18, 38–42
- TokenTalk connection for 6, 10, 15
- zone list for 41–42
- zone names for 40, 41–42
- TokenTalk access method 18, 21, 38–42
- TokenTalk network. *See* Token Ring network
- TokenTalk port 38–42, 92. *See also* Token Ring port
- TokenTalk Port Info dialog box
 - adding zone name to zone list in 40, 41
 - assigning network range in 39
 - changing network range in 81
 - changing zone list in 82–83
 - configuring TokenTalk port in 38–42 (fig.)
 - designating port as
 - nonseed port 39
 - seed port 39–42
 - removing zone name from zone list in 40, 42
 - renaming zone in 40, 41
 - setting default zone in 40, 42
- TokenTalk version 6
- tone dialing 50–51 (fig.), 55
- topology
 - of AppleTalk network 142
 - change 109, 114, 119, 120, 123, 124
 - check 107, 125
 - connecting networks with different 142

- layouts of
 - backbone networks 146 (fig.)
 - internets 142–149 (fig.)
 - networks 144, 146, 147
- location of router, in internet 115, 118, 142–144 (fig.), 149
- and routing distances 146, 147
- traffic. *See also* network activity
 - balancing on internet 144, 149
 - broadcasting routing tables and 65
 - clustering remapped networks and 65
 - cross-network, avoiding 144, 149, 153
 - current level of 149
 - display of
 - as bar graph 96, 97
 - as line graph 96, 97–98
 - evaluating levels of 148–149
 - excessive 107, 110, 122, 142, 144, 149
 - high levels of, on router 6
 - incoming 99–100, 101
 - isolating, on network 142, 143, 153
 - minimizing
 - between zones 142
 - on slow half-routing link or tunnel 69–71
 - monitoring 96–98, 99–100, 149
 - outgoing 99–100, 101
 - reducing, on slow half-routing or tunnel port 70–71
 - on redundant path 70
 - router placement and 149
 - routing traffic 65
 - types of 148
 - volume of 101, 148
- troubleshooting. *See also* error messages
 - hardware problems 106, 107
 - internet problems 112–119
 - network hiding 116, 119, 120, 123
 - network-number remapping 116, 119, 120, 123, 125
 - network problems 106, 107, 108–110
 - Router Log and 107, 111–112 (fig.)
 - router problems 107, 111–112 (fig.), 125–128

- stopping the router when 112
- strategy 106–107
- wide area internet problems 119–125
- tunnel 58 (fig.), 59–60 (fig.)
 - allowing routing distance greater than 15 hops on 115, 118
 - as backbone network 145
 - built on
 - foreign network system 57, 92, 145
 - TCP/IP network 2, 57
 - connecting different organization's internets 62
 - defined 58
 - exterior routers and 58–60 (fig.)
 - fully connected tunnels 59–60 (fig.)
 - minimizing traffic on 69
 - partially connected tunnels 59–60 (fig.)
 - problems with
 - no zones or devices across, in Chooser 120
 - remapping network numbers on 116
 - routing distances and 68, 116
 - using instead of half-routing link 122
- tunneling
 - AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension and 2 defined 57
 - exterior routers and 58 (fig.), 59–60
 - foreign network system and 57–60
 - fully connected tunnel and 59–60 (fig.)
 - partially connected tunnel and 59–60 (fig.)
 - routing distances and 68
- tunneling port. *See also* half-routing port
 - activating at router startup 62
 - allowing routing distances greater than 15 hops on 67–68, 115, 118
 - avoiding redundant paths on, when remapping network numbers 62, 148
 - clustering remapped networks and 65–67
 - configuring
 - deactivated at router startup to prevent loop 62–63

- deactivated when router is running to prevent loop 62–63, 119, 120, 124, 148
- deactivating
 - backup path 124
 - to force reclustering 123, 125
 - to reestablish primary path 124
- defined 21
- designating as backup path 69–70
- eliminating redundant paths on 148
- foreign network system and 21
- as forwarding port 92
- hiding networks on 72–74
- hop-count reduction and 67–68
- increasing routing distance through 69, 70–71
- is not forwarding port 119
- minimizing traffic on slow 69–71
- not activated at router startup 123
- problems with 115, 116, 119, 124, 125
- remapping remote network numbers on 62–67, 124, 125, 148
- resolving network-numbering conflicts on 62–67
- specifying a remapping range for 62
- using redundant paths on 69–71

U

- Unknown Network error 100
- upgrading from AppleTalk Internet Router version 2.0 11–12
- user port
 - AppleTalk connection as
 - default 14
 - designating 14–16
 - other than LocalTalk 15–16, 76
 - wrong, designated as user port 113
 - configuring 20
 - deactivating 78
 - defined 14
 - selecting zone for 15–16, 76
- Using the AppleTalk/IP Wide Area Extension* 2, 57, 80, 92, 112, 119, 128

Using the AppleTalk/X.25 Wide Area Extension 3, 47, 80, 112, 119, 128

V

- view. *See* detailed view; summary view
- View menu 85–86 (fig.), 95 (fig.), 157
- virus-protection program 110

W

- WANs. *See* wide area networks
- wide area internet problems
 - forwarding port not half-routing or tunneling port 119
- inaccessible zone in Chooser 123
- no zones or devices across half-routing link in Chooser on networks connected to router 121
- no zones or devices across tunnel in Chooser on networks connected to exterior router 120
- router continues sending packets over backup path when primary path accessible 124
- routing tables contain network numbers for unknown networks with same zone names 125
- tunneling port not activating when starting router 124
- zones or devices across half-routing link in Chooser intermittently on network connected to router 122
- zones or devices on hidden network in Chooser on network from which hidden 123
- wide area networks (WANs) 43, 50, 62, 72
- wide area routing options
 - backup paths 69–70
 - clustering 65–67 (fig.)
 - increasing routing distance through port 70–71
 - network hiding 72–74 (fig.)
 - network-number remapping 62–64
 - redundant paths 69–71

wide area routing options (*continued*)
 routing distances greater than 15 hops,
 allowing 67–68 (fig.)
wildcard characters in AppleTalk 36, 131,
 132, 133
windows
 opening multiple 89
 selecting 159
Windows menu 159

X, Y

X.25 access method 3
X.25 port 22

Z

zones
 AppleTalk internets and 151–153
 for AppleTalk network, defining 34,
 36, 37, 40, 41–42, 151
 assigning devices to 34, 151
 associated with cluster 65
 balancing network services and 152
 changing for routers 76
 clustering remapped networks and 65,
 67
 default 16, 42, 137, 151
 defined 151
 for device, selecting 113
 devices in 152
 devices on same or different networks
 in 152
 facilitating departmental work and 142,
 152–153
 internet, dividing into 151–153 (fig.)
 isolating traffic and 153
 for LocalTalk network 34
 maximum number of 34
 merging two existing 82
 minimizing traffic between 142
 network, dividing into 142
 for network, defining 34
 number of, on internet 90
 obtaining from seed router 32, 36
 problems with
 across half-routing link in Chooser
 intermittently 122
 computer that can't access, on
 hidden network 120
 default, different from actual 137
 devices in wrong, in Chooser 113
 devices not in same 113
 duplicate device names in 114
 in hidden networks 120
 in hidden networks in Chooser on
 computers in network from which
 hidden 123
 in inaccessible network in Chooser
 123
 in networks more than 15 hops away
 120
 none across half-routing link in
 Chooser 121
 none across tunnel in Chooser on
 exterior router 120
 none on part of internet in Chooser
 127
 not in Network Information window
 117–119
 number of, in internet, exceeds
 maximum size of zone table 117
 only zones in network found first on
 Chooser's search displayed 116
 users can't access 108
 wrong, selected 113
 renaming 41
 for router Macintosh 14, 15–16, 76
 routing information for each, in
 routing table 91, 93
 selecting from list of connected zones 37
 shared network services and 142, 152
zone information
 clearing obsolete 113
 conflicting 138
zone list
 adding zone name to 40, 41, 130
 for AppleTalk network 34
 assigning to network 34

changing 82–83
in Chooser 82, 125, 151
defined 34
in detailed view 93
displayed after remapping and clustering
 networks on tunneling ports 91
for Ethernet network 39, 40, 151
maximum zones in 34
Name Lookups Out and 100
in networking applications 151
obtaining from seed router 32, 39
problems with
 incomplete 117
 incorrect 137, 138
 insufficient memory to add all zone
 names to 130
 router can't start, specified different
 from actual 137
 router can't start, specified doesn't
 contain zone name in actual 137
removing zone name from 42
renaming zone in 41
in routing table 82, 91
for Token Ring network 39, 40, 151
zone name
 adding 40, 41, 130
 assigning to network 34, 36, 40, 151
 changing 82–83, 113
 in Chooser 82, 125, 151
 for destination network 91
 for LocalTalk network 34, 35, 36, 151
 Name Lookups Out and 100
 obtaining from seed router 32, 36
 problems with
 incorrect 113, 136, 137, 138
 insufficient memory to add all to
 zone list 130
 none obtained from current
 AppleTalk connection 133
 router can't start, specified different
 from actual 137
 router can't start, specified not in
 actual zone list 137
 removing from zone list 42

- renaming 41
- in routing table 82, 91, 93
- selecting from list of connected zones 37
- sorting routing table by 94 (fig.)
- specifying 36, 132
- in summary view 93
- in zone list, at least one 34
- Zone Name text box 36, 40, 41, 42
- zone table
 - maximum number of entries in 26
 - size of
 - default 26
 - increasing 26, 117
 - maximum, exceeded 117
 - memory and 26
 - reducing 26
 - specifying maximum 26
- Zone Table Entries text box 26

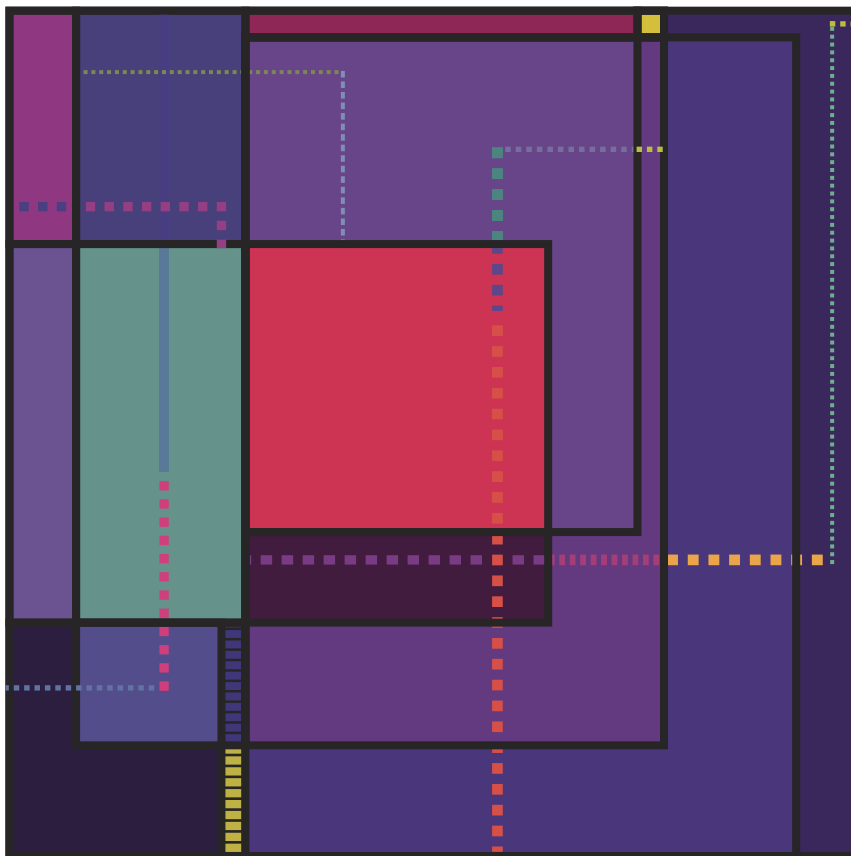
The Apple Publishing System

The *Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide* was written, edited, and composed on a desktop publishing system using Apple Macintosh computers, an AppleTalk network system, Microsoft Word, and QuarkXPress. Line art was created with Adobe Illustrator. Proof pages were printed on Apple LaserWriter printers. Final pages were output directly to separated film on an Electrocomp 2000. PostScript™, the LaserWriter page-description language, was developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Text type and display type are Apple's corporate font, a condensed version of Garamond. Bullets are ITC Zapf Dingbats®.



Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide—Addendum





©WozFest HQ, 2025

Apple, the Apple logo, AppleShare, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, ImageWriter, iMac, iPadOS, LaserWriter, LocalTalk, Macintosh, macOS, and MacTCP are trademarks of [Apple Inc.](#), registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

System 7, and TokenTalk are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Use of the “keyboard” Apple logo (Option-Shift-K) for commercial purposes without the prior written consent of Apple may constitute trademark infringement and unfair competition in violation of federal and state laws.

ITC Garamond and ITC Zapf Dingbats are registered trademarks of [Monotype ITC Inc.](#)

Microsoft is a registered trademark of [Microsoft Corporation](#).

Google Docs is a trademark of [Google LLC](#).

[Affinity](#) is a registered trademark of Serif (Europe) Ltd.

[Ubuntu](#) is a registered trademark of Canonical Ltd.

[QEMU](#) is a trademark of Fabrice Bellard.

VNC is a registered trademark of [RealVNC Limited](#).

Oracle is a registered trademark of [Oracle Corporation](#).

Brother is a trademark of [Brother Industries, Ltd.](#)

Other product and company names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Simultaneously published around the world.

Mention of third-party products is for informational purposes only and constitutes neither an endorsement nor a recommendation. WozFest HQ assumes no responsibility with regard to the performance or use of these products.

Published: 2025-03-07 00:12

Errata should be addressed to: airaga-errata@europius.zone

The **WozFest** Publishing System

The *Apple Internet Router Administrator's Guide—Addendum* was written, edited, and composed at **WozFest** on a desktop publishing system using an Apple [iMac](#) computer, the GlobalTalk network system, Microsoft Word, Google Docs, and Affinity Publisher. Line art was created with Affinity Designer. Screenshots were created using the QEMU emulation system running on a Ubuntu host on Oracle Cloud Infrastructure and captured automatically with [Keyboard Maestro](#) on macOS 15 Sequoia via VNC on macOS and iPadOS. Proof pages were printed on a [Brother laser printer](#). Final pages were output directly to PDF.

Text type and display type are Apple's prior corporate font, a condensed version of ITC Garamond. Bullets are ITC Zapf Dingbats.